The cocotex.dtx Package

A modular package suite for automatic, flexible typesetting

Version 0.4.0 (2024/01/29)

Table of contents

In	troduction	V
1 2	Basic concepts	V
	mechanism	V
M	odul 1 cocotex.dtx	3
P	art I: Core Functions	
M	odul 2 coco-kernel.dtx	9
1	Exception handlers	9
2	Containers	10
3	Components	12
	3.1 Simple Components	12
	3.2 Counted Components	15
4	Hooks	19
5	Properties	20
	5.1 Setting Properties	20
	5.2 Using Properties	20
	5.3 Processing Instructions	20
_	5.4 Property Conditionals	21
6	Helper macros	21
	6.1 Handling of Optional Arguments	22
	6.2 Iterators	
	6.3 Attributes	22
7	6.4 Style Classes	23
7	Legacy Functions	24
M	odul 3 coco-common.dtx	25
1	Package options	25
	1.1 Accessibility Features	25
2	Commonly Used Low-Level Macros and Registers	26
	2.1 Hard Dependencies	26
	2.2 Common Variables	26
	2.3 Helper macros	
	2.4 Masks	27
	2.5 Arithmetics	28
	2.6 Determine actual page number	29
3	Re-Thinking LATEX Core Functions	30
	3.1 Keeping .aux-Files Up-to-Date	30
	3.2 Content lists	30
	3.3 Indentation and Left Margins of Potentially Numbered Items	32
	3.4 Label generation and selection	35
	3.5 Link Generation	36
M	odul 4 coco-accessibility.dtx	37

Modul 5 coco-meta.dtx 43 1 Counted Container Handlers 43 1.1 Generic Blocks 43 1.2 Contributor Roles 44 2 Labeled Components 46 3 common meta data 46 3.1 Affiliations 47 Part II: Document Level Structures Modul 6 coco-headings.dtx 53 Initializers for New Heading levels and their layouts 53 1.1 Initializers for New Heading Levels 58 1.2 Initializers for New Heading Levels 58 1.2 Initializers for Instances of Heading Levels 58 1.2 Texternalisation of Heading Compoents 59 2.1 Content Headings 60 2.	2	LaTeX code 1.1 General Processing 1.2 Lua injection 1.3 XMP Integration 1.4 Output Intent and ICC Profiles 1.5 Transformation of Typographic Unicode characters 1.6 Encoding of the PDF-A Conformance 1.7 Automatic PDF Tagging Lua code 2.1 Local Variables and Tables 2.2 Meta Data Extraction 2.3 Public Methods	37 38 38 38 39 40 40 40 40
1.1 Generic Blocks 43 1.2 Contributor Roles 44 2 Labeled Components 46 3 common meta data 46 3.1 Affiliations 47 Part II: Document Level Structures Modul 6 coco-headings.dtx 1 Facility for declaring heading levels and their layouts 53 1.1 Initializers for New Heading Levels 58 1.2 Initializers for Instances of Heading Levels 58 1.3 Label mechanism 59 2 Externalisation of Heading Compoents 59 2.1 Common Stuff 60 2.2 Table of Contents Entry 60 2.3 Facility to create the running title macros 61 2.4 Facility to create PDF bookmarks 62 3 Rendering the Headings 62 3.1 Inline Headings 62 3.2 Block Headings 62 4 The heading environment 63 4.1 Environment Macros 63 4.2 Content Handlers 64 5 Defaults 65 6 Miscellaneous 67 6.1 Alternative paragraph separation 67 Modul 7 coco-notes.dtx			
2 Labeled Components 46 3 common meta data 46 3.1 Affiliations 47 Part II: Document Level Structures Modul 6 coco-headings.dtx 1 Facility for declaring heading levels and their layouts 53 1.1 Initializers for New Heading Levels 58 1.2 Initializers for Instances of Heading Levels 58 1.3 Label mechanism 59 2 Externalisation of Heading Compoents 59 2.1 Common Stuff 60 2.2 Table of Contents Entry 60 2.3 Facility to create the running title macros 61 2.4 Facility to create PDF bookmarks 62 3 Rendering the Headings 62 3.1 Inline Headings 62 3.2 Block Headings 62 3.1 Environment Macros 63 4.1 Environment Macros 63 4.2 Content Handlers 64 5 Defaults 65 6 Miscellaneous 67 6.1 Alternative paragraph separation 67 Modul 7 coco-notes.dtx 69 Modul 8 coco-script.dtx 73 3 Predefined script	1	1.1 Generic Blocks	43
3.1 Affiliations	2	Labeled Components	
Modul 6 coco-headings.dtx 53 1 Facility for declaring heading levels and their layouts 53 1.1 Initializers for New Heading Levels 58 1.2 Initializers for Instances of Heading Levels 58 1.3 Label mechanism 59 2 Externalisation of Heading Compoents 59 2.1 Common Stuff 60 2.2 Table of Contents Entry 60 2.3 Facility to create the running title macros 61 2.4 Facility to create PDF bookmarks 62 3 Rendering the Headings 62 3.1 Inline Headings 62 3.2 Block Headings 62 3.1 Inline Headings 62 3.2 Block Headings 62 4 The heading environment 63 4.1 Environment Macros 63 4.2 Content Handlers 64 5 Defaults 65 6 Miscellaneous 67 6	3		
1 Facility for declaring heading levels and their layouts 53 1.1 Initializers for New Heading Levels 58 1.2 Initializers for Instances of Heading Levels 58 1.3 Label mechanism 59 2 Externalisation of Heading Compoents 59 2.1 Common Stuff 60 2.2 Table of Contents Entry 60 2.3 Facility to create the running title macros 61 2.4 Facility to create PDF bookmarks 62 3 Rendering the Headings 62 3.1 Inline Headings 62 3.2 Block Headings 62 4 The heading environment 63 4.1 Environment Macros 63 4.2 Content Handlers 64 5 Defaults 65 6 Miscellaneous 67 6.1 Alternative paragraph separation 67 Modul 8 coco-script.dtx 73 1 Default fallback font 73 2 Generic Fonts Declaration Mechanism 74 3 Predefined script systems 75 3.1 Support for Armenian script 75 3.2 Support for Japanese script 75 3.4 Support for Hebrew script 75	P	art II: Document Level Structures	
1 Facility for declaring heading levels and their layouts 53 1.1 Initializers for New Heading Levels 58 1.2 Initializers for Instances of Heading Levels 58 1.3 Label mechanism 59 2 Externalisation of Heading Compoents 59 2.1 Common Stuff 60 2.2 Table of Contents Entry 60 2.3 Facility to create the running title macros 61 2.4 Facility to create PDF bookmarks 62 3 Rendering the Headings 62 3.1 Inline Headings 62 3.2 Block Headings 62 4 The heading environment 63 4.1 Environment Macros 63 4.2 Content Handlers 64 5 Defaults 65 6 Miscellaneous 67 6.1 Alternative paragraph separation 67 Modul 8 coco-script.dtx 73 1 Default fallback font 73 2 Generic Fonts Declaration Mechanism 74 3 Predefined script systems 75 3.1 Support for Armenian script 75 3.2 Support for Japanese script 75 3.4 Support for Hebrew script 75	М	odul 6 coco-headings dtx	53
1.2 Initializers for Instances of Heading Levels 58 1.3 Label mechanism 59 2 Externalisation of Heading Compoents 59 2.1 Common Stuff 60 2.2 Table of Contents Entry 60 2.3 Facility to create the running title macros 61 2.4 Facility to create PDF bookmarks 62 3 Rendering the Headings 62 3.1 Inline Headings 62 3.2 Block Headings 62 4 The heading environment 63 4.1 Environment Macros 63 4.2 Content Handlers 64 5 Defaults 65 6 Miscellaneous 65 6.1 Alternative paragraph separation 67 Modul 7 coco-notes.dtx 69 Modul 8 coco-script.dtx 73 1 Default fallback font 73 2 Generic Fonts Declaration Mechanism 74 3 Predefined script systems 75 3.1 Support for Armenian script 75 3.2 Support for Chinese script 75 3.3 Support for Japanese script 75 3.4 Support for Hebrew script 75		3	
1.3 Label mechanism 59 2 Externalisation of Heading Compoents 59 2.1 Common Stuff 60 2.2 Table of Contents Entry 60 2.3 Facility to create the running title macros 61 2.4 Facility to create PDF bookmarks 62 3 Rendering the Headings 62 3.1 Inline Headings 62 3.2 Block Headings 62 4 The heading environment 63 4.1 Environment Macros 63 4.2 Content Handlers 64 5 Defaults 65 6 Miscellaneous 67 6.1 Alternative paragraph separation 67 Modul 7 coco-notes.dtx 69 Modul 8 coco-script.dtx 73 1 Default fallback font 73 2 Generic Fonts Declaration Mechanism 74 3 Predefined script systems 75 3.1 Support for Armenian script 75 3.2 Support for Linese script 75 3.3 Support for Japanese script 75 3.4 Support for Hebrew script 75		· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	
2 Externalisation of Heading Compoents 59 2.1 Common Stuff 60 2.2 Table of Contents Entry 60 2.3 Facility to create the running title macros 61 2.4 Facility to create PDF bookmarks 62 3 Rendering the Headings 62 3.1 Inline Headings 62 3.2 Block Headings 62 4 The heading environment 63 4.1 Environment Macros 63 4.2 Content Handlers 64 5 Defaults 65 6 Miscellaneous 67 6.1 Alternative paragraph separation 67 Modul 8 coco-script.dtx 73 1 Default fallback font 73 2 Generic Fonts Declaration Mechanism 74 3 Predefined script systems 75 3.1 Support for Armenian script 75 3.2 Support for Chinese script 75 3.3 Support for Japanese script 75 3.4 Support for Hebrew script 75 3.4 Support for Hebrew script 75			
2.2 Table of Contents Entry 60 2.3 Facility to create the running title macros 61 2.4 Facility to create PDF bookmarks 62 3 Rendering the Headings 62 3.1 Inline Headings 62 3.2 Block Headings 62 4 The heading environment 63 4.1 Environment Macros 63 4.2 Content Handlers 64 5 Defaults 65 6 Miscellaneous 67 6.1 Alternative paragraph separation 67 Modul 7 coco-notes.dtx 69 Modul 8 coco-script.dtx 73 1 Default fallback font 73 2 Generic Fonts Declaration Mechanism 74 3 Predefined script systems 75 3.1 Support for Armenian script 75 3.2 Support for Chinese script 75 3.3 Support for Japanese script 75 3.4 Support for Hebrew script 75	2		
2.3 Facility to create the running title macros 61 2.4 Facility to create PDF bookmarks 62 3 Rendering the Headings 62 3.1 Inline Headings 62 3.2 Block Headings 62 4 The heading environment 63 4.1 Environment Macros 63 4.2 Content Handlers 64 5 Defaults 65 6 Miscellaneous 67 6.1 Alternative paragraph separation 67 Modul 7 coco-notes.dtx 69 Modul 8 coco-script.dtx 73 1 Default fallback font 73 2 Generic Fonts Declaration Mechanism 74 3 Predefined script systems 75 3.1 Support for Armenian script 75 3.2 Support for Chinese script 75 3.3 Support for Japanese script 75 3.4 Support for Hebrew script 75			
2.4 Facility to create PDF bookmarks 62 3 Rendering the Headings 62 3.1 Inline Headings 62 3.2 Block Headings 62 4 The heading environment 63 4.1 Environment Macros 63 4.2 Content Handlers 64 5 Defaults 65 6 Miscellaneous 67 6.1 Alternative paragraph separation 67 Modul 7 coco-notes.dtx 69 Modul 8 coco-script.dtx 73 1 Default fallback font 73 2 Generic Fonts Declaration Mechanism 74 3 Predefined script systems 75 3.1 Support for Armenian script 75 3.2 Support for Chinese script 75 3.3 Support for Japanese script 75 3.4 Support for Hebrew script 75		· ·	
3 Rendering the Headings 62 3.1 Inline Headings 62 3.2 Block Headings 62 4 The heading environment 63 4.1 Environment Macros 63 4.2 Content Handlers 64 5 Defaults 65 6 Miscellaneous 67 6.1 Alternative paragraph separation 67 Modul 7 coco-notes.dtx 69 Modul 8 coco-script.dtx 73 1 Default fallback font 73 2 Generic Fonts Declaration Mechanism 74 3 Predefined script systems 75 3.1 Support for Armenian script 75 3.2 Support for Chinese script 75 3.3 Support for Japanese script 75 3.4 Support for Hebrew script 75			
3.2 Block Headings 62 4 The heading environment 63 4.1 Environment Macros 63 4.2 Content Handlers 64 5 Defaults 65 6 Miscellaneous 67 6.1 Alternative paragraph separation 67 Modul 7 coco-notes.dtx 69 Modul 8 coco-script.dtx 73 1 Default fallback font 73 2 Generic Fonts Declaration Mechanism 74 3 Predefined script systems 75 3.1 Support for Armenian script 75 3.2 Support for Chinese script 75 3.3 Support for Japanese script 75 3.4 Support for Hebrew script 75	3	Rendering the Headings	
4 The heading environment 63 4.1 Environment Macros 63 4.2 Content Handlers 64 5 Defaults 65 6 Miscellaneous 67 6.1 Alternative paragraph separation 67 Modul 7 coco-notes.dtx 69 Modul 8 coco-script.dtx 73 1 Default fallback font 73 2 Generic Fonts Declaration Mechanism 74 3 Predefined script systems 75 3.1 Support for Armenian script 75 3.2 Support for Chinese script 75 3.3 Support for Japanese script 75 3.4 Support for Hebrew script 75			
4.1 Environment Macros 63 4.2 Content Handlers 64 5 Defaults 65 6 Miscellaneous 67 6.1 Alternative paragraph separation 67 Modul 7 coco-notes.dtx 69 Modul 8 coco-script.dtx 73 1 Default fallback font 73 2 Generic Fonts Declaration Mechanism 74 3 Predefined script systems 75 3.1 Support for Armenian script 75 3.2 Support for Chinese script 75 3.3 Support for Japanese script 75 3.4 Support for Hebrew script 75	4		
5 Defaults 65 6 Miscellaneous 67 6.1 Alternative paragraph separation 67 Modul 7 coco-notes.dtx 69 Modul 8 coco-script.dtx 73 1 Default fallback font 73 2 Generic Fonts Declaration Mechanism 74 3 Predefined script systems 75 3.1 Support for Armenian script 75 3.2 Support for Chinese script 75 3.3 Support for Japanese script 75 3.4 Support for Hebrew script 75			63
6 Miscellaneous 67 6.1 Alternative paragraph separation 67 Modul 7 coco-notes.dtx 69 Modul 8 coco-script.dtx 73 1 Default fallback font 73 2 Generic Fonts Declaration Mechanism 74 3 Predefined script systems 75 3.1 Support for Armenian script 75 3.2 Support for Chinese script 75 3.3 Support for Japanese script 75 3.4 Support for Hebrew script 75	_		
6.1 Alternative paragraph separation67Modul 7 coco-notes.dtx69Modul 8 coco-script.dtx731 Default fallback font732 Generic Fonts Declaration Mechanism743 Predefined script systems753.1 Support for Armenian script753.2 Support for Chinese script753.3 Support for Japanese script753.4 Support for Hebrew script75			
Modul 8 coco-script.dtx 73 1 Default fallback font 73 2 Generic Fonts Declaration Mechanism 74 3 Predefined script systems 75 3.1 Support for Armenian script 75 3.2 Support for Chinese script 75 3.3 Support for Japanese script 75 3.4 Support for Hebrew script 75	Ü		
1 Default fallback font 73 2 Generic Fonts Declaration Mechanism 74 3 Predefined script systems 75 3.1 Support for Armenian script 75 3.2 Support for Chinese script 75 3.3 Support for Japanese script 75 3.4 Support for Hebrew script 75	M	odul 7 coco-notes.dtx	69
1 Default fallback font732 Generic Fonts Declaration Mechanism743 Predefined script systems753.1 Support for Armenian script753.2 Support for Chinese script753.3 Support for Japanese script753.4 Support for Hebrew script75	M	odul 8 coco-script.dtx	73
3 Predefined script systems753.1 Support for Armenian script753.2 Support for Chinese script753.3 Support for Japanese script753.4 Support for Hebrew script75	1		
3.1Support for Armenian script753.2Support for Chinese script753.3Support for Japanese script753.4Support for Hebrew script75			
3.2Support for Chinese script	3		
3.4 Support for Hebrew script		3.2 Support for Chinese script	75
3.5 Support for Arabic script		3.4 Support for Hebrew script	75 76

	3.6 Support for Greek script	76
	3.7 Support for Syrian script	76
	3.8 Support for medieval scripts and special characters	77
М	odul 9 coco-title.dtx	79
1	Top-Level Interface	
2	Procesing of PDF Meta Data	
	2.1 Processing of the Document's Title	
	2.2 Processing of the Document's Author	
	2.3 Processing of the PDF's Creator, Producer, and Keywords Meta Data	
	2.4 Including the XMP Meta Data	
3	Intermediate Level Interfaces	
5	3.1 Funds, Grants, and Supporters	
	3.2 Simple Component Declarations	
4	Default Settings	
4	Delault Settings	80
М	odul 10 coco-floats.dtx	93
1	Package Setup	
1	1.1 Hard requirements	
	1.2 Document Class Option overrides	
2	.clo	
_	2.1 Internal registers	
	2.2 AtBeginDocument hook	-
3	Internal macros	
3		
1		
4	Float Container and Component Declarations	
5	Label and Referencing mechanisms	
6	Processing the Float	
	6.1 Common Float and Sub-Float Environments	
	6.2 Processing the Contents of the Float Environment	
_	6.3 Caption mechanism	
7	Handlers for different float types	
	7.1 Handlers for generic floats	
	7.2 Handlers for figures	
	7.3 Handlers for tables	
	7.4 Helpers	
8	Default Settings	113
N/I	odul 11 coco-frame.dtx	117
	Top-Level Interface	
1		
_	Cropmark printer	117
M	odul 12 coco-lists.dtx	121

Introduction

1 Basic concepts

The core concept of the CoCoT_EX Framework is the strict separation between document specific information bearing units and publisher specific layout and rendering instructions to a degree that is far more versatile and delicate than LATEX's usual distinction between form and content.

The basic data type in the Framework is the **Container**. On the end-user level, this is virtually always a LATEX environment that contain a specific set of macros used to store the atomic units of information. Those macros and their contents are called **Components**.

The instructions on how those Components are to be processed and ultimately rendered are called **Properties**.

2 Flow of macro definitions and their expansions in modules that use the Property and Component mechanism

WARNING!

The following section is deprecated and will be changed or deleted in future releases.

Modules, that utilize the Property and Component mechanisms, define a *Declare macro*. This Declare macro is basicly a constructor for a new LATEX environment which should share some common *Properties* and *Components* with other environments that are defined with the same Declare macro. Modules, therefore, constitute what in other programming languages may be referred to as *Namespaces*.

The purpose of the Declare macro is

- 1. to define a LATEX environment to be used in tex documents,
- 2. to define the Component macros available and allowed within that environment
- 3. to define the available Properties used to determine the appearance of the environment's content in the final render
- 4. to define the processing of the information specific to each instance of the environment.

Within the body of the Declare macro's definition, a Use macro is defined which determines the Namespace-specific processing of an environment's contents. This macro is (usually) expanded at the \end of the declared environment. The Use macro is where the actual processing of an environment's contents takes place. Since it is part of the body of the Declare macro, each environment declared with this Declare macro defines it's own Use macro.

The Declare macro usually has at least two arguments: one argument to give a *name* to the soon-to-be-defined environment, and a second one to define the Properties *specific* to that environment *on top of* the Namespace's default Properties. Some environments may also have a Parent which causes Properties cascade across different inter-dependent environments.

Within the tex-document, whenever an environment is used, the flow is as follows:

- 1. store the contents of all Components used within the environment in internal, locally defined, tex macros
- 2. expand the property lists:

vi Introduction

- (a) expand the Default Properties of the Namespace
- (b) If necessary, expand the specific Properties of the parent environment (overwriting the default properties of the same name). This step may occur recursively for each of the parent's own parents.
- (c) expand the Specific Properties of the Environment itself.

3. Expand the Use-Macro

- (a) Process the components, depending on contents, presence, or absence of Components alter other Components or trigger property manipulations, etc.
- (b) Calculate the final states of variable properties (in dependency on the available components, other properties or global parameters)
- (c) Print the overall result of those calculations.

One more driver function

%<*driver>

If we want to run the splitted development dtx locally, this macro prevents undefined control sequence errors and actually includes the dtx chunks.

25 \def\includeDTX#1{\input src/#1.dtx}

End driver function

26 %</driver>

Modul 1

cocotex.dtx

This is the main class file for the CoCoTeX LATEX package.

File Preamble

Hard-coded requirements

```
| RequirePackage{kvoptions-patch} | RequirePackage{xkeyval}
```

Passing options down to the LATEX standard packages

```
77 \DeclareOptionX{main}{\PassOptionsToPackage{\CurrentOption}{babel}}
78 \DeclareOption{es-noindentfirst}{\PassOptionsToPackage{es-noindentfirst}{babel}}
79 \DeclareOption{es-noshorthands}{\PassOptionsToPackage{es-noshorthands}{babel}}
80 \PassOptionsToPackage{shorthands=off}{babel}
```

The option pubtype (short for "publication type") has possible four values: mono, collection, journal, and article . mono (also the default when no pubtype is given) and collection are used to switch between single and multiple contributor documents; collection and journal to switch between one-time text collections and periodicals, respectively. All three types implicitly load the LATEX standard class book.

collection is used when the document's components (i. e., chapters) are contributed by different authors like collections or proceedings. journal is used for collections where each contribution is accompanied by a myriad of meta data. mono stands for monographs, i.e., whole books that are written by the same author(s).

The publicaten type article is intended for single articles of a journal. It loads the LATEX standard class article.

```
newif\ifcollection \collectionfalse
newif\ifarticle \articlefalse
newif\ifmonograph \monographfalse
newif\ifjournal \journalfalse
define@choicekey{cocotex.cls}{pubtype}[\tp@pubtype\nr]{collection,article,journal,mono}{%
ifcase\nr\relax% collection
global\collectiontrue
nr' article
global\articletrue
or* article
nglobal\articletrue
or* journal
```

```
\global\journaltrue

clse% monograph

global\monographtrue

fi

plotter

plott
```

Passing options down to various CoCoT_FX modules:

```
DeclareOptionX{debug}{\PassOptionsToPackage{\CurrentOption}{coco-kernel}}
DeclareOptionX{a11y}{\PassOptionsToPackage{\CurrentOption}{coco-common}}
DeclareOptionX{no-compress}{\let\tp@no@pdf@compression\relax}
DeclareOptionX{color-enc}{\PassOptionsToPackage{\CurrentOption}{coco-common}}
DeclareOptionX{usescript}{\PassOptionsToPackage{\CurrentOption}{coco-script}}
DeclareOptionX{nofigs}{\PassOptionsToPackage{\CurrentOption}{coco-floats}}
DeclareOptionX{ennotoc}{\PassOptionsToPackage{\CurrentOption}{coco-notes}}}
DeclareOptionX{endnotes}{\PassOptionsToPackage{\CurrentOption}{coco-notes}}}
DeclareOptionX{resetnotesperchapter}{\PassOptionsToPackage{\CurrentOption}{coco-notes}}}
PocclareOptionX{endnotesperchapter}{\PassOptionsToPackage{\CurrentOption}{coco-notes}}}
ProcessOptionsX
```

Disables PDF compression when the no-compress document option is set.

```
69 \ifx\tp@no@pdf@compression\relax
70 \AtBeginDocument{%
71 \ifx\pdfobjcompresslevel\@undefined
72 \edef\pdfobjcompresslevel{\pdfvariable objcompresslevel}%
73 \fi
74 \pdfcompresslevel=0
75 \pdfobjcompresslevel=0
76 }%
77 \fi
```

All publication types supported by CoCoTeX are based on one of LATEX's default classes book or article:

```
78 \RequirePackage{coco-common}
79 \ifarticle
80 \LoadClass[10pt,a4paper]{article}
81 \else
82 \LoadClass[10pt,a4paper]{book}
83 \fi
```

Offsets are the removed to make all values relative to the upper left corner of the page to ease maintainance.

```
84 \voffset-lin\relax
85 \hoffset-lin\relax
```

Typesetting automata need some room to play

```
86 \emergencystretch=2em
```

and strong restrictions:

```
| Arenchspacing | Clubpenalty10000 | Widowpenalty10000 | Widowpenalty10000 | Widowpenalty10000 | Widowpenalty10000 | Clubpenalty10000 | Clubpenalty100000 |
```

page style without any headers or footers

```
90 \def\ps@empty{%
    \let\@oddhead\@empty
91
92
    \let\@evenhead\@empty
93
    \let\@oddfoot\@empty
94
    \let\@evenfoot\@empty
95 }
```

vacancy pages need to have page style empty:

```
96 \def\cleardoublepage{\clearpage\if@twoside \ifodd\c@page\else
```

re-defined to make front- and backmatter components distinguish-able

```
\ifarticle\else
98
     \newif\if@frontmatter \@frontmatterfalse
99
     \renewcommand\frontmatter{%
100
       \cleardoublepage
101
102
       \@mainmatterfalse
       \@frontmattertrue
103
104
       \pagenumbering{arabic}}
     \renewcommand\mainmatter{%
105
       \cleardoublepage
106
       \@frontmatterfalse
107
108
       \@mainmattertrue}
109
     \renewcommand\backmatter{%
       \cleardoublepage
110
       \@mainmatterfalse
111
       \@frontmatterfalse}
112
113 \fi
   \usepackage{soul}
```

Inclusion of the script module which also loads the babel package

```
115 \ifLuaTeX
116 \RequirePackage{coco-script}
117 \else
118 \RequirePackage{babel}
119 \fi
120 \RequirePackage{coco-headings}
```

Inclusion of the float module

```
121 \RequirePackage{coco-floats}
```

Inclusion of the title page module

```
122 \RequirePackage{coco-title}
```

Inclusion of the end-/footnotes module

```
123 \RequirePackage{coco-notes}
```

Fallback, in case, coco-headings.sty is not loaded for some reason.

Some more hard dependencies:

```
124 \RequirePackage{index}
125 \makeindex
126 \RequirePackage{hyperref}
```

Finally, some hyperref settings (TODO: check, which of those are better placed inside the local publisher's styles)

127 \hypersetup{%

first, we want links to be breakable

breaklinks% 128

> and the table of contents not to be automatically linked, as this causes problems with the ltpdfa package and we add the links via the coco-common module, anyways.

,linktoc=none% 129

pdf broders are controlled via the coco-frame module, if necessary

```
,pdfborder={0 0 0}%
130
```

The next option causes hyperref to calculate the encoding of DocumentInfo and other direct-to-PDF data (bookmarks, etc.) automatically

,pdfencoding=auto%

Bookmarks are numbered by default.

```
,bookmarksnumbered=true%
132
133 }
```

Since 1tpdfa messes with a lot of LATEX Kernel macros (like \begin and \end) as well as external packages (hyperref), it must be loaded last:

```
134 \ifx\tp@do@ally\relax
     \RequirePackage{coco-accessibility}
135
136 \fi
```

%</class> 137

Part I

Core Functions

Modul 2

coco-kernel.dtx

This file provides the object-oriented interfaces for all other CoCoTEX modules.

```
24 %<*kernel>
```

Preamble and Package Options

```
25 \NeedsTeXFormat{LaTeX2e}[2018/12/01]
26 \ProvidesPackage{coco-kernel}
27 [2024/01/29 0.4.0 cocotex kernel]
```

The debug option triggers the output of additional information messages to the shell.

```
28 \newif\if@tp@debug \@tp@debugfalse
29 \DeclareOption{debug}{\global\@tp@debugtrue}%
30 \ProcessOptions
```

Hard dependencies

```
31 \RequirePackage{etoolbox}
```

1 Exception handlers

\tpKernelDebugMsg is used to print debug messages iff the debug class option is set.

```
\def\tpKernelDebugMsg#1{\if@tp@debug\message{[tp Kernel Debug]\space\space#1^^J}\fi}
```

\tpPackageError is a macro to create error messages specific to the Framework. #1 is the module, #2 is the type of error, #3 is the immediate error message, #4 is the help string.

```
33 \def\tpPackageError#1#2#3#4{%
34 \GenericError{%
35    (#1)\@spaces\@spaces\@spaces
36    }{%
37        [CoCoTeX #1 #2 Error] #3%
38    }{}{#4}%
39 }
```

\tpPackageWarning is a macro to create warnings specific to the Framework. #1 is the module, #2 is the type of error, #3 is the immediate warning message.

```
40 \def\tpPackageWarning#1#2#3{%
41    \GenericWarning{%
42    (#1)\@spaces\@spaces\@spaces
43    }{%
```

\tpPackageInfo is a macro to create shell output specific to the Framework. #1 is the module, #2 is the type of message, #3 is the immediate info string.

2 Containers

Containers are the package's core data structure. They are basicly sets of properties that are processed in the same way.

\tpDeclareContainer is the constructor for new Containers. #1 is the Container's name, #2 its body which conists of Inheritance instructions, Type and Env declarations.

```
\def\tp@warningspaces{\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\space\s
```

We want the declarator macros to be only allowed inside the \tpDeclareContainer macro.

```
64 \begingroup
```

\tpInherit The inherit mechanism is dynamic, i.e., we can load multiple type declarations from multiple containers at once.

```
65 \def\tpInherit##1##2{\@tp@inherit{##1}{##2}{#1}}%
```

\tpDeclareType Each Container is defined by the data types it provides. These data types are declared with this macro. The first argument ##1 is the name of the data type. The second argument ##2 is a list of code that is specific to this type, usually something like Component or Property declarations, handlers, and so forth.

```
\long\def\tpDeclareType##1##2{\csgappto{tp@type@##1@#1}{##2}}%
```

\tpDeclareEnv Each container usually is realised as a LaTeX environment. The \tpDeclareEnv macro is used to set up this environment. Usually, the environment has the same name as the Container. With the optional argument ##1 you can override the environment's name. However, keep in mind that the Container's name is not changed by

re-naming the corresponding environment. ##2 is used for the stuff done at the beginning of the environment, ##3 for the stuff done at the end.

In the begin part, the Types declared in the Container declaration's body should be evaluated using the \text{\text{tpEvalType}} macro, see below.

```
\def\tpDeclareEnv{\@ifnextchar [{\tp@declare@env}{\tp@declare@env[#1]}}%]
67
      \def\tp@declare@env[##1]##2##3{%
68
69
       \csgdef{##1}{\global\let\reserved@cont\tp@cur@cont\def\tp@cur@cont{#1}##2}%
70
       \csgdef{end##1}{##3}\global\let\tp@cur@cont\reserved@cont}%
```

```
71
      \def x{\%}
72
        #2%
73
      }%
74
    \expandafter\x\endgroup
75 }
  \@onlypreamble\tpDeclareContainer
```

\tpAddToType add additional content (i.e., the next token) to a Type #1 of a previously declared Container #2.

```
\def\tpAddToType#1#2{\csgappto{tp@type@#1@#2}}
```

\tpEvalType calls the Declaration list for data Type #2. With optional #1 the Container Class can be overriden.

```
78 \def\tpEvalType{\tp@opt@curcont\tp@eval@type}
79 \def\tp@eval@type[#1]#2{%
    \expandafter\ifx\csname tp@type@#2@#1\endcsname\relax
80
      \tpPackageError{Kernel}{Class}
81
      {Data Type #2 in Container #1 undefined!}
82
      {You try to evaluate a data type '#2' from container '#1', but that data type has not been
83
          declared.}%
    \else
84
      \tpKernelDebugMsg{Evaluating tp@type@#2@#1:^^J \csmeaning{tp@type@#2@#1}}%
85
      \csname tp@type@#2@#1\endcsname
86
    \fi
87
88 }
```

\tpCheckParent checks if a Container #1 is declared so that another container #2 can inherit.

```
89 \def\tpCheckParent#1#2{%
    \expandafter\ifx\csname tp@container@#1\endcsname\relax
90
91
      \tpPackageError{Kernel}{Class}
92
      {Parent Container '#1' undeclared}
      {You tried to make a Container named '#2' inherit from a Container named '#1', but a
93
          Container with that name does not exist.\MessageBreak
       Please make sure that parent Containers are declared before their descendents.}%
94
95
    \else
      \csgdef{tp@parent@#2}{#1}%
96
97
    \fi
98 }
```

\@tp@inherit is the low-level inherit function. #1 is a comma-separated list of things to be inherited, and #2 is the Container-list that should be inherited from, and #3 is the name of the descending Container.

```
99 \def\@tp@inherit#1#2#3{\@tp@parse@inherit #1,,\@nil #2,,\@nil #3\@@nil}
```

low-level function to recursively parse the parameters of the \@tp@inherit macro, above.

```
\def\@tp@parse@inherit #1,#2,\@nil #3,#4,\@nil #5\@@nil{%
100
     \let\next\relax
101
     \mathbf{if}!#1!\else
102
       \mathbf{if}!#3!\else
103
104
         \tp@do@inherit{#1}{#3}{#5}%
         \def\@argii{#2}\def\@argiv{#4}%
105
         \ifx\@argii\@empty
106
107
           \ifx\@argiv\@empty\else
             \def\next{\@tp@parse@inherit #1,,\@nil #4,\@nil #5\@@nil}%
108
109
           \fi
         \else
110
           \ifx\@argiv\@empty
111
             \def\next{\qparseqinherit $\#2,\qnil $\#3,,\qnil $\#5\qqnil}
112
           \else
113
             \def\next{%
114
               \@tp@parse@inherit #1,,\@nil #4,\@nil #5\@@nil
115
               \@tp@parse@inherit #2,\@nil #3,#4,\@nil #5\@@nil
116
117
118
           \fi\fi\fi\fi
     \next}
119
```

Ultimately, this function is called for each Type-Container combination invoked by the \tpInherit macro.

```
120 \def\tp@do@inherit#1#2#3{%
     \tpKernelDebugMsg{#3 inherits #1 from #2.}%
121
     \tpCheckParent{#2}{#3}%
122
     \expandafter\ifx\csname tp@type@#1@#2\endcsname\relax
123
       \tpPackageError{Kernel}{Type}{Type '#1' was not declared}{Type '#1' was not declared for
124
           Container '#2'.}%
125
     \else
       \edef\x{\noexpand\csgappto{tp@type@#1@#3}}%
126
127
       \expandafter\x\expandafter{\csname tp@type@#1@#2\endcsname}%
       \tpKernelDebugMsg{value tp@type@#1@#3:^^J \expandafter\meaning\csname tp@type@#1@#3\
128
           endcsname}%
     \fi
129
130 }
```

3 Components

3.1 Simple Components

"Simple Components" are basicly data storages. They are used within Containers to obtain data and store them for further processing at the end of the Container, or even beyond.

\tpDeclareComp defines simple component macros.

- is the Component's identifier. The internal macro that is used to store the Component's value is \csname tp@ <current Container name>@<#1>\endcsname. If omitted, #1 is the same as #2.
- #2 is the Component's name.
- #3 is code that is executed before assignment of the user's value
- #4 is code that is executed *after* assignment of the user's value

```
\expandafter\long\expandafter\def\csname tp#2\endcsname##1{%
134
135
      #3\expandafter\long\expandafter\def\csname tp@\tp@cur@cont @#1\endcsname{##1}\ignorespaces
           #4}%
136 }
```

\tpDeclareGComp is a shortcut to declare simple, globally available Components with the name #2 and an optional initial value #1. They are usually empty.

```
137 \def\tpDeclareGComp{\tp@opt@empty\tp@declare@global@comp}%
138 \def\tp@declare@global@comp[#1]#2{%
     \tpDeclareComp{#2}{\expandafter\global}{}%
139
140
     if!#1!\\else\\csname tp#2\\endcsname{#1}\\fi%
141 }
```

Once declared, a component can be set in two ways: The first way is to use \tp<name> with one argument for its value. The second, preferred, way is to use the \tpComp macro which takes two arguments: #1 is the name of the Component, #2 is the value. This macro checks whether an Component of name #1 has actually been declared and does so, if not.

\tpComp This is the preferred way to fill a Component with content. #1 is the Component's name, #2 is the value.

```
\long\protected\def\tpComp#1#2{%
142
     \ifx\tp@is@counted\relax
143
       \ifcsdef{tp@\tp@cur@cont @#1}{}
144
         {\theta \in \mathbb{Z}}  {\tp@cnt@grp-#1-\csname \tp@cnt@grp Cnt\endcsname}{#1}{}}
145
       \csgdef{tp@\tp@cur@cont @\tp@cnt@grp-#1-\csname \tp@cnt@grp Cnt\endcsname}{#2}%
146
147
148
       \ifcsdef{tp@\tp@cur@cont @#1}{}{\tpDeclareComp{#1}{}}}%
       \csname tp#1\endcsname{#2}%
149
150
     \fi
151 }
152
   \let\tpSetComp\tpComp
```

\tpUseComp is a high level command to return (or print) the material stored as a Component with the name #1.

```
\def\tpUseComp#1{\csname tp@\tp@cur@cont @#1\endcsname}
```

\tpStoreComp is a high level command to store the value of a Component #2 into a TeX macro #1.

```
154 \def\tpStoreComp#1#2{%
155
     \def\@tempa{\protected@edef#1}%
     \expandafter\@tempa\expandafter{\expandafter\expandafter\expandafter\noexpand\csname tp@\
156
         tp@cur@cont @#2\endcsname}
157 }
```

\tpGStoreComp is the global variant of \tpStoreComp.

```
158 \def\tpGStoreComp#1#2{%
     \def\@tempa{\protected@xdef#1}%
159
     \expandafter\@tempa\expandafter{\expandafter\expandafter\expandafter\noexpand\csname tp@\
160
         tp@cur@cont @#2\endcsname}
161 }
```

\tpUseGComp is a high level command to return (or print) the material stored as a global Component from the Container #1 with the name #2.

```
\def\tpUseGComp#1#2{\csname tp@#1@#2\endcsname}
```

```
\label{loss} $$ \def \times {\mathbb{1}}{\tau}_{163} \def \end{*} $$ \def \times {\mathbb{1}}{\tau}_{1} \def \end{*} $$ $$ \def \end{*} $$ \def \end{*}
```

\tpIfComp is a high level macro that executes #2 if the Component macro #1 is used in a Container (empty or non-empty), and #3 if not.

```
| \long\def\tpIfComp#1#2#3{\expandafter\ifx\csname tp@\tp@cur@cont @#1\endcsname\relax#3\else#2\fi
```

\tpWhenComp is a high level variant of **\tpIfComp** that omits the **else**-branch. #2 is code that is expanded when the Component #1 is used in a container (empty or non-empty).

\tpUnlessComp is a high level variant of **\tpIfComp** that omits the **then**-branch. #2 is the code that is expanded when a Container #1 is *not* used in a Container (neither empty nor non-empty).

```
\long\def\tpUnlessComp#1#2{\expandafter\ifx\csname tp@\tp@cur@cont @#1\endcsname\relax#2\fi}
```

\tpIfComp Global variant of **\tpIfComp**. #1 is the name of the Container, #2 is the name of the Component, #3 is the then-branch, #4 is the else-branch.

```
| \long\def\tpIfGComp#1#2#3#4{\expandafter\ifx\csname tp@#1@#2\endcsname\relax#4\else#3\fi
```

\tpIfCompEmpty is a high level macro that executes #2 if the Component macro #1 is empty (or {}) within its Container, and #3 if it is either not existant or non-empty.

```
| \long\def\long@empty{} | \long\def\tpIfCompEmpty#1#2#3{\expandafter\ifx\csname tp@\tp@cur@cont @#1\endcsname\long@empty #2\else#3\fi}
```

\tpIfGCompEmpty is a global variant of **\tpIfCompEmpty**. #1 is the name of the Container, #2 is the name of the Component, #3 is the then-branch, #4 is the else-branch.

```
| \long\def\tpIfGCompEmpty#1#2#3#4{\expandafter\ifx\csname tp@#1@#2\endcsname\long@empty#3\else#4\| fi}
```

\tp@check@empty handles the distinction between empty and un-used components: First, check if #4#3 is set (=anything but \relax). If it is set, check if it is empty. If empty, set #4#3 to \relax, meaning further occurences of \IfComp{#4#3} will execute the else branch. If #4#3 is non-empty, do nothing.

If #4#3 is already \relax, check if the fallback #1#3 is set. If so, make #4#3 an alias of #1#3. If not, do nothing.

Optional #1 is the prefix of the fallback component, #2 is the Container name, #3 is the name of the Component, #4 is the Override's prefix.

```
| \def\tp@check@empty{\tp@opt@empty\@tp@check@empty}%
                     \def\@tp@check@empty[#1]#2#3#4{%
172
173
                                         \tpIfComp{#4#3}
                                                     {\tpIfCompEmpty{#4#3}
174
                                                                 \label{lem:let-csname} $$ \{\expandafter \le tp@#2@#4#3\endcsname \le t
175
176
                                                                 {}}
                                                      {\tpIfComp{#1#3}
177
178
                                                                 {\expandafter\expandafter\expandafter\let\expandafter\csname tp@#2@#4#3\expandafter\
                                                                                               endcsname\csname tp@#2@#1#3\endcsname}
179
                                                                 {}}}
```

3.2 Counted Components

Counted Components are Components that may occur in the same parent Container multiple times. They may be multiple instances of single-macro Components, or recurring collections of multiple Components, called Component Groups.

Component Groups

\tpDeclareComponentGroup is a user-level macro to declare a new Component Group with the name #1 and the body #2.

```
\def\tpDeclareComponentGroup#1#2{%
180
     \csnumgdef{#1Cnt}{\z@}%
181
     \csdef{#1}{\tp@opt@empty{\csname @#1\endcsname}}%
182
     \csdef{@#1}[##1]{%
183
       \def\tp@cnt@grp{#1}%
184
       \csxdef{#1Cnt}{\expandafter\the\expandafter\numexpr\csname #1Cnt\endcsname+\@ne\relax}%
185
       \if!##1!\else\csgdef{tp@\tp@cur@cont @#1-\csname #1Cnt\endcsname @attrs}{##1}\fi
186
187
       \csname @#1@hook\endcsname
188
     }%
189
     \csdef{end#1}{{\tpToggleCountedCond\csuse{tp@compose@group@#1}}}%
190
191 }
```

\tpGroupHandler is used to declare a new group handler. A Group Handler is a hook for code #2 that is expanded at the end of a Component Group #1's environment. It is mostly used to process Components within a Group instance and store the result in their own components. For instance, a Group Handler can be used to combine a First Name and a Surname to a combined Component "FullName".

```
192 \def\tpGroupHandler#1#2{%
    \ifcsdef{@#1}
193
194
       {\ifcsdef{tp@compose@group@#1}
        {\csgappto{tp@compose@group@#1}{#2}}
195
        {\csgdef{tp@compose@group@#1}{#2}}}
196
       {htpPackageError{Kernel}{Type}{Component Group '#1' unknown!}{You tried to declare a Group
197
           Handler for a Component Group that has not been declared, yet! Use \string\
           tpDeclareComponentGroup{#1}{} to declare the Component Group first.}}%
198 }
```

\tp@cnt@grp is a designated group name. Counted Components of the same group use the same counter.

```
199 \let\tp@cnt@grp\@empty
```

\tpUseGCompIdx picks a Component with name #3 and index #2 from a group #1.

```
\def\tpUseGCompIdx#1#2#3{\csname tp@\tp@cur@cont @#1-#3-#2\endcsname}
```

\tpUseGroupProp picks a specific Property of a group.

```
201
   \def\tpUseGroupProp#1#2#3{%
     \begingroup
202
       \@tempcnta\numexpr#2\relax
203
204
       \letcs\tpTotalCount{#1Cnt}%
       \def\tp@cnt@grp{#1}%
205
206
       \tpToggleCountedCond
207
       \csnumdef{#1Cnt}{\the\@tempcnta}%
208
       \tpCurCount=\the\@tempcnta\relax%
209
       \csname tp@\tp@cur@cont @#3\endcsname%
```

Iterating over Component Groups

The following two macros iterate over all instances of a Component Group #1 in the current Container and applies for each instance the Property #2. The result is appended to the Collector Component #3, if and only if that Component is not yet set for the current Container at the time of the first iteration.

While the first macro only writes the Property definition into the Collector Component, the second fully expands the macros inside the Property and stores the result in Component #3.

Use the former to print and the latter to further process the respective results.

\tpCurCount stores the number of the current instance of a Counted Component. Use this in the declarations of Properties that are expanded within the Component Group.

```
\newcount\tpCurCount
```

\tp@assign@res assignes the result of the Component collection to a control sequence with the name #1 and resets the temporary storage.

```
212 \def\tp@assign@res#1{%
     \ifx\tp@iterate@res\relax
213
       \cslet{#1}\relax
214
215
216
       \expandafter\csname #1\expandafter\endcsname\expandafter{\tp@iterate@res}%
217
     \global\let\tp@iterate@res\relax
218
219 }
```

\tpIfCompOverride is a switch to apply #2 if the Collection Component #1 has been set manually within a container or #3 if it has been generated from Counted Components.

```
220 \def\tpIfCompOverride#1#2#3{\expandafter\ifx\csname tp@used@#1@override\endcsname\@empty#2\else
       #3\fi}
```

\tpComposeCollection is used to create an unexpanded Collection Component #3 from all instances of Component Group #1 using the instructions given by property #2.

```
\def\tpComposeCollection#1#2#3{%
221
     \tpIfComp{#3}{\cslet{tp@used@#3@override}\@empty}{%
222
223
       \ifcsdef{#1Cnt}{%
         \expandafter\ifnum\csname #1Cnt\endcsname > \z@\relax
224
           \edef\tp@iterate@res{%
225
            \noexpand\bgroup
226
              \noexpand\def\noexpand\tpTotalCount{\csname #1Cnt\endcsname}%
227
              \noexpand\tpToggleCountedCond
228
229
              \noexpand\def\noexpand\tp@cnt@grp{#1}}%
230
            \expandafter\@tempcntb=\csname #1Cnt\endcsname\relax
231
            \tp@iterate{\@tempcnta}{\@ne}{\@tempcntb}{%
              \edef\@tempb{%
232
                %% top-level counter for user interaction
233
234
                \noexpand\tpCurCount=\the\@tempcnta
235
                %% evaluating group attributes
236
                \ifcsdef{tp@\tp@cur@cont @#1-\the\@tempcnta @attrs}{\noexpand\tpParseAttributes{#1-\
                    the\@tempcnta}{\csname tp@\tp@cur@cont @#1-\the\@tempcnta @attrs\endcsname}}{}
237
                %% internal counter for macro grabbing
                \noexpand\csnumdef{#1Cnt}{\tpCurCount}%
238
```

```
\noexpand\tpUseProperty{#2}}%
239
240
              \expandafter\expandafter\expandafter\def
             \expandafter\expandafter\tp@iterate@res
241
242
              \expandafter\expandafter\expandafter\\expandafter\tp@iterate@res\@tempb}%
243
            }%
244
            \expandafter\def\expandafter\tp@iterate@res\expandafter{\tp@iterate@res\egroup}%
245
            \tp@assign@res{tp#3}%
246
        \fi
247
       }{}}%
248 }
```

\tpApplyCollection is an alternative version of \tpComposeCollection and fully expands the Property #2 before it is stored inside the Component #3.

```
249 \def\tpApplyCollection#1#2#3{%
     \tpIfComp{#3}{\cslet{tp@used@#3@override}\@empty}
250
       {\tp@apply@collection{#1}{#2}%
251
        \tp@assign@res{tp#3}%
252
253
      }%
254 }
```

#1 is the group name, #2 is the property to format the collection

```
255 \def\tp@apply@collection#1#2{%
     \begingroup
256
257
       \global\let\tp@iterate@res\relax
258
       \letcs\tpTotalCount{#1Cnt}%
259
       \tp@iterate{\@tempcnta}{\@ne}{\tpTotalCount}{%
260
         \bgroup
          \tpToggleCountedCond
261
          \def\tp@cnt@grp{#1}%
262
263
          \csnumdef{#1Cnt}{\the\@tempcnta}%
264
          \ifcsdef{tp@\tp@cur@cont @#1-\the\@tempcnta @attrs}{\tpParseAttributes{#1-\the\@tempcnta
               }{\csname tp@\tp@cur@cont @#1-\the\@tempcnta @attrs\endcsname}}{}
265
          \tpCurCount=\the\@tempcnta
          \protected@xdef\@tempb{\csname tp@\tp@cur@cont @#2\endcsname}%
266
          \@temptokena \expandafter{\@tempb}%
267
          \def\@tempc{\csgappto{tp@iterate@res}}%
268
          \expandafter\@tempc\expandafter{\@tempb}%
269
270
         \egroup
271
       }%
     \endgroup
272
273 }
```

\tp@comp@def is used to pass a Counted Component into a TeX macro. #1 is a prefix to the def command, e.g., \global or \protected; #2 is the name of the TeX macro, #3 is the Name of the Counted Component (incl. the tp-prefix), and #4 is the Property that should be applied to all Members of the Counted Component.

```
274 \def\tp@comp@def{\tp@opt@empty\@tp@comp@def}
   \def\@tp@comp@def[#1]#2#3#4{%
275
     \tp@apply@collection{#3}{#4}%
276
     \ifx\tp@iterate@res\relax
277
       #1\let#2\relax%
278
279
     \else
280
       \def\@tempa{#1\def#2}%
       \tp@assign@res{@tempa}%
281
     \fi
282
283 }
```

\tpCompDef is the User-level command for *local* \tp@comp@def.

```
\def\tpCompDef{\tp@comp@def}
```

\tpCompDef is the User-level command for global \tp@comp@def.

```
\def\tpCompGDef{\tp@comp@def[\global]}
```

Declaring Counted Component

\tpDeclareCountedComp is a user-level macro to create a new Counted Component. #1 is the user-level name of the Component.

```
\def\tpDeclareCountedComp#1{%
286
     \tp@def@counted@comp
287
       {\tp@cnt@grp-#1-\csname \tp@cnt@grp Cnt\endcsname}
288
289
290
       {}
       {\expandafter\global}%
291
292 }
```

\tp@def@counted@comp registers counter dependent Components. #1 is the internal name of the Component which is composed out of the group name, the value of the group counter and the user-level macro name #2; #3 is some custom code passed to the second argument of \tpDeclareComp; and #4 is a modifier to the internal macro definition.

```
\def\tp@def@counted@comp#1#2#3#4{%
293
     \tpDeclareComp[#1]{#2}
294
       {\bgroup#3\expandafter\global}
295
296
       {\def\@tempa{{@tp@reset@components@\tp@cur@cont}}%
297
        \edef\@tempb{\noexpand\csgundef{tp@\noexpand\tp@cur@cont @#1}}%
        \expandafter\expandafter\expandafter\csgappto\expandafter\@tempa\expandafter{\@tempb}%
298
299
        \egroup}%
     #4\expandafter\long\expandafter\def\csname tp@\tp@cur@cont @#2\endcsname{\csname tp@\
300
         tp@cur@cont @#1\endcsname}%
301 }
```

Resetting Counted Component

\tp@reset@components is used to reset Counted Components to prevent later Containers of a given type to feed the components from the previous Container of the same type. Usually, this is prevented by keeping Component definitions strictly local.

I some cases, however, Components may be declared globally, i.e., they may be re-used after the Container is ended. In this so-called Asynchronuous Processing of Components, the reset should be done at the very beginning of the next instance of the container type to prevent bleeding of one container's components into the next one, specifically if a container occurs more than once in the same document.

#1 is the type of the Component set.

```
302 \def\tp@reset@components#1{%
303
     \csname @tp@reset@components@#1\endcsname
     \global\cslet{@tp@reset@components@#1}\relax%
304
305 }
```

Toggling Conditionals for Counted Components

\tpToggleCountedCond In order to process Counted Components, we need to re-define the Conditionals in a way such that the Component is expanded twice before the comparison takes place to correctly resolve the Component counter.

Warning! Use this macro only within local groups!

```
306 \long\def\tpToggleCountedCond{%
    \let\tp@is@counted\relax
```

This re-definitions of \tpIfComp cannot use etoolbox's \cs... macros since the conditional can be embedded inside itself. If an inner csname is undefined, the condition for the outer one would be reset before it can be expanded by \ifx.

```
\long\def\tpIfComp##1##2##3{%
308
      \expandafter\expandafter\expandafter\let\expandafter\csname tp@comp@name\expandafter\
309
           endcsname\csname tp@\tp@cur@cont @##1\endcsname%
      \expandafter\expandafter\ifx\tp@comp@name\relax##3\else##2\fi%
310
311
     }%
     \long\def\tpIfCompEmpty##1##2##3{%
312
313
      \expandafter\expandafter\expandafter\ifx\csname tp@\tp@cur@cont @##1\endcsname\long@empty
           ##2\else ##3\fi}}
```

Hooks

Hooks are used to patch code into different parts of a Container's processing chain.

\tpDeclareHook registers a new hook. Optional #1 is the container for which the Hook is declared. If omitted, this defaults to \tp@cur@cont. #2 is the Hook's user-level name. Hooks always default to an empty string.

```
314 \def\tpDeclareHook{\tp@opt@curcont\tp@declare@hook}
   \def\tp@declare@hook[#1]#2{\expandafter\global\expandafter\let\csname tp@hook@#1@#2\endcsname\
       @empty}
```

\tpAddToHook adds new material to a Hook. If the hook has not yet been declared, a tpDeclareHook for that hook is applied first. In that case, use the optional #1 to specify the Container name that hook is intended for. If it is omitted, the current Container is used. #2 is the name of the hook the material in #3 is to be appended to.

```
316 \def\tpAddToHook{\tp@opt@curcont\tp@add@to@hook}
   \def\tp@add@to@hook[#1]#2#3{%
317
     \expandafter\ifx\csname tp@hook@#1@#2\endcsname\relax
318
       \tpDeclareHook[#1]{#2}%
319
     \fi
320
     \csgappto{tp@hook@#1@#2}{#3}%
321
322 }
```

\tpUseHook expands the current state of the hook with the name #2 from Container #1 (current Container if omitted).

```
323 \def\tpUseHook{\tp@opt@curcont\tp@use@hook}
   \def\tp@use@hook[#1]#2{\csuse{tp@hook@#1@#2}}
```

Properties

Setting Properties

\tpSetProperty is a user-level macro that provides the Property-Value interface for Containers. #1 is the name of the Property, #2 is the Value assigned to that Property.

```
325 \long\def\tpSetProperty#1#2{\long\csdef{tp@\tp@cur@cont @#1}{#2}}
```

\tpPropertyLet can be used to create an alias Property #1 of a given Property #2. Is is equivalent to \tpSetProperty ${\frak{1}}{\tpUseProperty{\frak{2}}}.$

```
326 \long\def\tpPropertyLet#1#2{\long\csdef{tp@\tp@cur@cont @#1}{\csuse{tp@\tp@cur@cont @#2}}}
```

\ttpPropertyLetX creates a Property #1 with the fully expanded value of another Property #2 Is is equivalent to $\tpSetPropertyX{\#1}{\tpUseProperty{\#2}}.$

```
327 \long\def\tpPropertyLetX#1#2{\long\csedef{tp@\tp@cur@cont @#1}{\csuse{tp@\tp@cur@cont @#2}}}
```

\tpSetValProp is a variant of \tpSetProperty that expands the value #2 once before assigning it to the Property macro with the name #1. This can be used to assign the current value of a variable macro, dimension, counter or length to a Property.

\tpSetPropertyX is another variant of \tpSetProperty, but it fully expands the value (using \edef) defined in #2 before the Property is stored in the Property macro named #1. Use this if you need to use conditionals to determine the actual values of Properties that otherwise expect fixed named or dimensional values.

```
329 \long\def\tpSetPropertyX#1#2{\long\csedef{tp@\tp@cur@cont @#1}{#2}}
```

\tpAddToDefault adds the material in the next token to a Container of name #1's Property Type.

```
330 \long\def\tpAddToDefault#1{\tpAddToType{Properties}{#1}}
```

5.2 Using Properties

\tpUseProperty is a user-level command to directly access a previously set Property.

\tpUsePropEnv is a user-level command to access a previously set Property and make it an environment accessible to Property specific processing instrunctions (see below).

```
\label{lem:cont:properties} $$ \ef{tp@f(tp@sePropEnv#1{\cslet{tp@#1@active}{\relax}\csuse{tp@\tp@cur@cont: @#1}\csundef{tp@#1@active}$$ $$
          }}
```

Processing Instructions

In general, processing instructions are commands that are only visible to a specific process and ignored by others. In CoCoT_FX, Processing Instructions (PIs) are commands placed inside a Component that should only take effect when that Component is processed through a specific Property.

\tpPI is a Processing Instruction that executes #2 when a Property with the name #1 is currently processed with the \tpUsePropEnv macro.

```
333 \DeclareRobustCommand\tpPI[2]{\ifcsdef{tp@#1@active}{#2}{}}
```

WARNING! The following section is deprecated and will be changed or deleted in future releases.

TODO: Incorporate into the Container inheritance mechanism. Check if inheritance of Container Types is to be distinguished from inheritance of Properties and their Values!

\tpCascadeProps recursivly loads a Container's own Properties, the Properties of the Container's parent(s), and the default Properties of the top-level Container. #1 is the current Container's name, #2 is the top-level Container.

```
334 \def\tpCascadeProps#1#2{%
     \csname tp@#2@default\endcsname
335
     \expandafter\ifx\csname tp@#2@#1@parent\endcsname\relax\else
336
337
       \expandafter\tp@inherit@props\expandafter{\csname tp@#2@#1@parent\endcsname}{#2}%
338
339
     \csname tp@#2@#1@properties\endcsname
340 }
```

This low-level macro recursivly loads properties from parent namespaces, if they exist. #1 is the parent (may be empty), #2 is the macro family.

```
\def\tp@inherit@props#1#2{%
341
     \expandafter\ifx\csname tp@#2@#1@parent\endcsname\relax\else
342
343
       \edef\@tempa{\csname tp@#2@#1@parent\endcsname}%
       \expandafter\tp@inherit@props\expandafter{\@tempa}{#2}%
344
345
     \fi
     \csname tp@#2@#1@properties\endcsname
346
347 }
```

Property Conditionals

\tpIfProp checks if a Property with the name #1 is defined and non-empty. If so, do #2, otherwise do #3.

```
348 \long\def\tpIfProp#1#2#3{%
349
     \expandafter\ifx\csname tp@\tp@cur@cont @#1\endcsname\relax#3\else
       \expandafter\ifx\csname tp@\tp@cur@cont @#1\endcsname\long@empty #3\else#2\fi
350
351
     \fi
   \ignorespaces}
```

\tpIfPropVal checks if a Property #1 expands to #2. If so, do #3, otherwise do #4.

Warning: Do not use this conditional in Properties that are used in \tpApplyCollection!

```
353 \long\def\tpIfPropVal#1#2#3#4{\long\def\@tempa{#2}%
354
     \expandafter\ifx\csname tp@\tp@cur@cont @#1\endcsname\@tempa\relax#3\else#4\fi\ignorespaces}
```

Helper macros

Handling of Optional Arguments

Two simple internal macros to ease up the handling of optional arguments.

\tp@opt@curcont overrides Container Names with the optional argument.

```
355 \long\def\tp@opt@curcont#1{\@ifnextchar[{#1}{#1[\tp@cur@cont]}}%]
```

\tp@opt@empty passes an empty string if the optional argument is missing.

```
\logdef\tp@opt@empty#1{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensu
```

\tp@opt@second passes the first mandatory argument to the optional argument if the latter is missing.

```
357 \let\tp@opt@second\@dblarg
```

6.2 **Iterators**

\tp@iterate traverses in #1-th steps (optional, defaults to +1) through counter #2 start at number #3 until and including number #4 and do at every loop #5 (from forloop.sty):

```
\long\def\tp@iterate{\@ifnextchar[{\@tp@iterate}{\@tp@iterate[\@ne]}}%]
   \long\def\@tp@iterate[#1]#2#3#4#5{%
359
     \advance#2 by #1\relax
360
     #2=#3\relax%
361
     \expandafter\ifnum#2>#4\relax%
362
     \else
363
364
365
       \tp@iterate[#1]{#2}{\the#2}{#4}{#5}%
366
     \fi}%
```

6.3 **Attributes**

Many macros and environments deal with optional arguments that are used to alter the behaviour of that macro or environment. The combination of a parameter and its set of possible values are calles Attributes. In this section, we define the parsers for those paramters.

In order to catch the babel package's messing with the quote symbol, we make sure it has the correct cat-code.

```
367 \begingroup
   \catcode'"=12
```

\tpParseAttributes High level wrapper for the attribute parser; #1 is the parent node of the attribute, #2 is the attribute chain

```
\gdef\tpParseAttributes#1#2{%
369
370
     if!#1!else
371
       \if!#2!\else
         \def\tp@cur@node{#1}%
372
         \@tp@parse@attributes #2,,\@nil
373
374
       \fi\fi}
```

The actual, recursively applying, parser comes in two parts:

\@tp@parse@attributes parses the single attributes in an optional argument,

```
375 \gdef\@tp@parse@attributes #1,#2,\@nil{%
                                                                                                            if!#1!else
376
377
                                                                                                                                                          \t 0 \times 1 = \0 \times 1 =
378
                                                                                                                                                          \mathbf{if}!#2!\else
                                                                                                                                                                                          \@tp@parse@attributes#2,\@nil
379
                                                                                                                                                       \fi\fi}
380
                                                                  \endgroup
381
```

and

\tp@parse@kv distinguishes between the parameter name and its value(s).

```
382 \gdef\tp@parse@kv#1=#2=#3\@ni1{%
     \edef\@argii{#2}%
383
     \ifx\@argii\@empty
384
385
       \expandafter\let\csname tp@\tp@cur@node @attr@#1\endcsname\@empty%
386
     \else
       \ifx #2 =\else
387
         \expandafter\def\csname tp@\tp@cur@node @attr@#1\endcsname{#2}%
388
       \fi
389
390
     \mathbf{fi}
```

\tpGetAttr returns the value of an attribute.

#1 is the attribute node, #2 is the attribute name.

```
\def\tpGetAttr#1#2{\csuse{tp@#1@attr@#2}}
```

\tpIfAttr can be used to call macros depending on whether an attribute is set.

#1 is the attribute node, #2 is the attribute name, #3 and #4 are the true and false branch, respectively.

```
392 \def\tpIfAttr#1#2#3#4{\ifcsdef{tp@#1@attr@#2}{#3}{#4}}
```

\tpIfAttrStr can be used to call macros depending if an attribute is set to the current (sub)container or group and what value it has.

#1 is the attribute node, #2 is the attribute name, #3 is the comparision value (a string!), #4 and #5 are the true and false branch, respectively.

```
393 \def\tpIfAttrStr#1#2#3#4#5{\tpIfAttr{#1}{#2}{\ifcsstring{tp@#1@attr@#2}{#3}{#4}{#5}}{#5}}
```

\tpIfAttrIsset can be used to check of a value-less attribute has been set (i.e., it expands to \@empty).

#1 is the attribute node, #2 is the attribute name, #3 and #4 are the true and false branch, respectively.

```
394 \def\tpIfAttrIsset#1#2#3#4{\tpIfAttr{#1}{#2}{\expandafter\ifx\csname tp@#1@attr@#2\endcsname\
       @empty#3\else#4\fi}{#4}}
```

Style Classes

Style Classes are locally usable sub-Containers.

\tpDeclareClass The top-level macro \tpDeclareClass[#1] {#2} [#3] {#4} has four arguments, two of which are optional. #2 is the name of the class. If this argument is empty, the special class name default is used. #4 is the declaration block of the class. This argument usually contains set of property assignments using the \tpSetProperty{crop>}{<val>} macro, see Sect. 5. The first optional argument #1 is the Style Class' parent Container. Using parent Containers, you can have Style Classes of the same name for different (sub-)Containers, e.g., a default class for each float and heading Container. The second optional argument #3 is the parent Style Class. Properties from that Style Class are loaded automatically prior to the loading of the current Style Class's Properties. This applies recursively allowing for a cascading of property values, as in CSS.

```
395 \long\def\tpDeclareClass{\@ifnextchar [{\@tp@set@class}{\@tp@set@class[default]}}%]
\label{longdef} $$ \ \end{area} $$ \end{area} $$ \ \end{area} $$ \ \end{area} $$ \ \end{area} $$ \end{ar
397 \long\gdef\tp@default@class@default{}
398 \long\def\tp@set@class[#1]#2[#3]#4{%
                        \def\@argii{#2}\ifx\@argii\@empty\let\@argii\tp@str@default\fi%
399
400
                                   \expandafter\long\expandafter\def\csname tp@#1@class@\@argii @parent\endcsname{#3}%
401
402
                          \expandafter\long\expandafter\def\csname tp@#1@class@\@argii\endcsname{#4}%
403
404 }
```

\tpUseClass is a user-level macro to expand and \(\alpha\)AJactivate\(\alpha\)AJ a Style Class' Properties, those of its recursive ancestor Style Classes, and the default Style Class respecting the current Container. #1 is the Style Class name, #2 is the Container.

```
\def\tpUseClass#1#2{%
405
     \expandafter\ifx\csname tp@#2@class@#1\endcsname\relax
406
       \expandafter\ifx\csname tp@default@class@#1\endcsname\relax
407
        \PackageError{cocotex.cls}{Class '#1' with scope '#2' not defined!}{Please declare the
408
             class '#1'!}%
       \fi
409
410
     \fi
411
     \csname tp@default@class@#1\endcsname%
412
     \expandafter\ifx\csname tp@#2@class@#1@parent\endcsname\relax\else
       \expandafter\tpUseClass\expandafter{\csname tp@#2@class@#1@parent\endcsname}{#2}%
413
414
     \csname tp@#2@class@#1\endcsname}
415
```

\CoCoTeX the CoCoTeX Logo.

```
\def\CoCoTeX{{\ttfamily CoCo\TeX}}}
```

Legacy Functions

```
WARNING!
The following section is
deprecated and will be
changed or deleted in
    future releases.
```

```
\def\tpNamespace#1{\def\tp@cur@cont{#1}}
```

```
%</kernel>
```

Modul 3

coco-common.dtx

This file provides some macros that are used in more than one CoCoT_EX module.

1 Package options

1.1 Accessibility Features

The option ally triggers loading of the CoCoT_EX Accessibility Module and its features.

```
36 \DeclareOptionX{a11y}{\let\tp@do@ally\relax}
```

Default color encoding passed as option to the xcolor package.

```
37 \def\tp@color@enc{cmyk}
38 \define@choicekey{coco-common.sty}{color-enc}[\@tp@color@enc\nr]{srgb,rgb,gray,cmy,cmyk,natural
       }[cmyk]{%
39
    \let\tp@color@enc\@tp@color@enc
40
    \ifcase\nr\relax% srgb
41
      \def\tp@color@enc{rgb}%
    \or% rgb
42
43
    \or% gray
44
    \or% cmy
45
      \def\tp@color@enc{cmyk}%
    \else% natural, i.e. no conversion of color spaces takes place
47
48
49 }
50 \ProcessOptionsX
51 \PassOptionsToPackage{\tp@color@enc}{xcolor}%
```

\tpIfAlly is a switch to distinct between compilation with (implicit #1) or without (implicit #2) activated accessibility features.

- $\label{lem:condoftwoles} $$ 10^{1} \left(\frac{1}{x}\right) \left(\frac{1}{x}\right) \left(\frac{1}{x}\right) $$$
- 53 \let\tpIfAlly\tp@if@ally
- 54 \def\tp@if@preamble{\ifx\@nodocument\relax\expandafter\@secondoftwo\else\expandafter\@firstoftwo
- 55 \let\tpIfPreamble\tp@if@preamble

Commonly Used Low-Level Macros and Registers

Contains common macros used in the CoCoTFX modules and that are intended for macro and stylesheet programming.

\RequirePackage{coco-kernel}

Hard Dependencies

Hard requirements for all CoCoT_FX modules:

57 \RequirePackage{xcolor}

Including the graphicx package and catching case-insensitive graphics file's endings from Word:

- 58 \RequirePackage{graphicx}
- \DeclareGraphicsRule{.EPS}{eps}{.EPS}{}

2.2 Common Variables

String Variables for Value Comparisions

\tp@str@default

60 \def\tp@str@default{default}

\tp@str@table

\def\tp@str@table{table}

\tp@str@figure

62 \def\tp@str@figure{figure}

Box Registers

Some temporary boxes that won't interfere with LaTeX's temporary boxes.

\tp@tempboxa

\newbox\tp@tempboxa

\tp@tempboxb

64 \newbox\tp@tempboxb

Length and Skip Registers

\tp@tempskipa

```
\newskip\tp@tempskipa
```

2.3 Helper macros

\afterfi used to execute code after the next \fi:

```
66 \def\afterfi#1\fi{\fi#1}
```

\tp@topstrut is a \strut that has the height of \topskip and the depth of the difference between the \baselineskip and \topskip.

```
\def\tp@topstrut{\vrule\@width\z@\@height\topskip\@depth\dimexpr\baselineskip-\topskip\relax}
```

\afterbox prevents indentation and additional spacing after environments. Intended to be used in combination with \aftergroup.

```
\def\@afterbox{%
68
69
    \everypar{%
70
      \if@nobreak
        \@nobreakfalse
71
72
        \clubpenalty \@M
        \if@afterindent \else
73
          {\setbox\z@\lastbox}%
74
75
          \everypar{}%
        \fi
76
77
        \clubpenalty \@clubpenalty
78
        {\setbox\z@\lastbox}%
79
        \everypar{}%
80
      \{fi\}
81
```

2.4 Masks

These macros are intended to mask non-content markup, like page- or line breaking commands in order to find and remove or alter them easier.

\hack intended to mask line breaking macros.

```
82 \let\hack\@firstofone
```

\hackfor intended to hide line breaking macros.

```
83 \let\hackfor\@gobble
```

\Hack intended to mask page breaking macros.

```
\let\Hack\@firstofone
```

\Hackfor intended to hide page breaking macros.

```
85 \let\Hackfor\@gobble
```

\@gobbleopt intended to nullify a macro's argument with a possible optional argument interfering.

Use it like this: \let\yourMacroWithOptArg\@gobbleopt

```
\long\def\@gobbleopt{\@ifnextchar[\@@gobbleopt{\@@gobbleopt[]}}%] \long\def\@@gobbleopt[#1]#2{}%
```

\tpGobble is used to de-activate certain macros to prevent them from being called multiple times while processing contents. An example is a footnote inside a caption while calculating the height of the caption. In this case, we need the space the footnote symbol requires without the actual footnote being written into the footnote insert, since that should happen when we actually print the caption.

```
88 \def\tpGobble{%
89  \renewcommand\footnote[2][\the\c@footnote]{\def\@thefnmark{##1}\@makefnmark}%
90  \renewcommand\index[2][]{}%
91  \renewcommand\marginpar[2][]{}%
92  \renewcommand\glossary[2][]{}%
93  \let\label\@gobble
94 }%
```

2.5 Arithmetics

\CalcRatio is used to calculate the ratio between two integers.

```
\def\CalcRatio#1#2{\strip@pt\dimexpr\number\numexpr\number\dimexpr#1\relax*65536/\number\dimexpr #2\relax\relax sp}
```

CalcModulo is used to calculate the remainder of integer division of #1 by #2. This needs a different approach than the common modulo definition, which would return negative results in some cases, as TeX rounds up the quotient of #1 and #2 if the first decimal place is equal to or greater 5.

```
96 \def\CalcModulo#1#2{\number\numexpr#1+#2-((#1+#2/2)/#2)*#2\relax}
```

\minusvspace Counterpart to LATEX's \addvspace: if the value of \minusvspace is larger than \lastskip, \lastskip is used. Otherwise, the value of \minusvspace is used.

```
\def\@xminusvskip{%
 97
      \ifdim\lastskip<\@tempskipb
 98
      \else
 99
         \ifdim\lastskip<\z@
100
         \else
101
           \ifdim\@tempskipb<\z@
102
103
             \advance\@tempskipb\lastskip
104
           \fi
           \vskip-\lastskip
105
           \vskip \@tempskipb
106
         \fi
107
      \mathbf{fi}
108
    \def\minusvspace#1{%
109
110
      \ifvmode
          \if@minipage\else
111
            \left\langle \mathbf{ifdim} \right\rangle = \left\langle \mathbf{z} \right\rangle
112
```

Compatibility to texlive pre 2020:

```
\ifx\@vspace@calcify\@undefined
\vskip #1\relax
```

```
\else
115
116
               \@vspace@calcify{#1}%
117
             \fi
118
           \else
119
           \setlength\@tempskipb{#1}%
120
             \@xminusvskip
121
           \fi
122
         \fi
123
      \else
124
        \@noitemerr
      \{fi\}
125
```

2.6 **Determine actual page number**

We need to determine the real page a floating object is printed. This mechanism is largely an adaption of the mechanism used in the marginnote package.

Counting absolute page numbers, however, may be misleading when the coco-title module is loaded and the cover page is not followed by an empty page. Therefore, we save the default page counter from LATEX to evaluate it independently from the actual manner of counting.

\the@tp@thispage

```
126 \def\the@tp@thispage{}%
```

\tp@abspage

```
\newcount\tp@abspage \tp@abspage\z@
```

\thetp@abspage

```
\def\thetp@abspage{\the\tp@abspage}
```

\if@tp@odd

```
129 \newif\if@tp@odd \@tp@oddtrue
```

```
130 \AtBeginDocument {%
131
     \global\tp@abspage=\c@page\relax%
     \g@addto@macro\@outputpage{\global\tp@abspage\c@page}%
132
133 }
```

\tp@test@page We split this into two parts. The first one is run before the floating object is placed. It will store the page according to the placement in the tex source code.

```
\def\tp@test@page{%
134
135
     \expandafter\ifx\csname the@tp@thispage\endcsname\@empty
136
       \gdef\the@tp@atthispage{1}%
     \else
137
       \expandafter\ifnum \the@tp@thispage=\tp@abspage%
138
139
         \begingroup
140
          \@tempcnta\the@tp@atthispage\relax
141
          \advance\@tempcnta\@ne\relax
          \xdef\the@tp@atthispage{\the\@tempcnta}%
142
143
         \endgroup
       \else
144
```

```
\gdef\@tp@atthispage{1}%
145
146
       \fi
     \fi
147
     \xdef\the@tp@thispage{\the\tp@abspage}%
148
149
     \let\@tp@currpage\relax
150
     \expandafter\ifx\csname \tp@cur@cont-\the@tp@thispage-\the@tp@atthispage\endcsname\relax
151
       \ifodd\tp@abspage\relax\@tp@oddtrue\else\@tp@oddfalse\fi
152
     \else
       \edef\@tp@currpage{\expandafter\expandafter\expandafter\@firstofone\csname \tp@cur@cont-\
153
           the@tp@thispage-\the@tp@atthispage\endcsname}%
154
       \ifodd\@tp@currpage\relax\@tp@oddtrue\else\@tp@oddfalse\fi
155
     \fi
156 }
```

\tp@save@page the second macro writes the actual position of the floating object into the aux files. This macro has to be placed inside the float environment/macro.

3 Re-Thinking LATEX Core Functions

3.1 Keeping .aux-Files Up-to-Date

\tpBreak is a general line break macro intended to be re-defined if necessary without touching LaTeX's kernel page and line breaking macros.

```
| \DeclareRobustCommand{\tpBreak}{\hfill\break}
```

3.2 Content lists

This part contains macros to "simplify" the generation of content lists like the table of contents or list of figures/tables, etc.

Entries in the list-files (e.g., \jobname.toc, \jobname.lof, etc.) usually contain \contentsline macros that expand to 10<level>. Whenever a level of Components that are to be written into content lists is declared, the package automatically generates a \tp010<level> macro for this level of entries. The content-baring argument of \tpContentsline (or \tp010<level>, resp.) contains Components.

Once a list file is read, those \tp@l@<level> macros are expanded in two steps. Each entry constitutes a Container in its own right. It therefore can have multiple Components. The first step is the extraction phase, where the entry's Container is dynamically declared, the corresponding properties are initialised, and its Components are extracted

\tp@init@1@ is a low-level macro used to dynamically define \tp@1@<level> macros. Optional #1 is an override for counters that have to be restored, #2 is the list file ending (raw entries being stored in a file \jobname.#2), #3 is a number that indicated the nesting depth, #4 is the nested level's unique name.

```
| def\tp@init@l@{\tp@opt@empty\@tp@init@l@}%
| def\@tp@init@l@[#1]#2#3#4{%
| expandafter\ifx\csname c@#2depth\endcsname\relax
| expandafter\global\expandafter\newcount\csname c@#2depth\endcsname
```

```
\expandafter\global\csname c@#2depth\endcsname=0\relax
166
167
     \expandafter\ifx\csname tp@#2@extract@data\endcsname\relax
168
169
       \expandafter\let\csname tp@#2@extract@data\endcsname\tp@extract@generic
170
171
     \expandafter\ifx\csname tp@#2@print@entry\endcsname\relax
       \expandafter\let\csname tp@#2@print@entry\endcsname\tp@print@eneric
172
173
     \fi
174
     \expandafter\long\expandafter\gdef\csname tp@l@#4\endcsname##1##2{%
175
       \ifLuaTeX\suppresslongerror=1\fi
       \expandafter\ifnum \csname c@#2depth\endcsname<#3\relax
176
177
       \else
         \bgroup
178
          \long\def\tpTocLink####1{\hyper@linkstart{link}{\Hy@tocdestname}{####1}\hyper@linkend}%
179
180
          \csname tp@#2@extract@data\endcsname{#3}{#4}{##1}{##2}%
          \csname tp@#2@print@entry\endcsname{#4}%
181
182
        \egroup
183
       \fi
184
       \ifLuaTeX\suppresslongerror=0\fi
185
     }}
```

\tpContentsline has two purposes: It re-directs 1@<level> macros to our own version, and it ensures that LATEX won't break if Components in the content lists contain \par. In order for the latter to work correctly, however, we need to patch \contentsline to make it \long, first.

```
186 \AtBeginDocument {%
187
   \begingroup\toks0=\expandafter{\contentsline{#1}{#2}{#3}{#4}}
   \edef\x{\endgroup\long\def\noexpand\contentsline##1##2##3##4{\the\toks0 }}\x
188
189 }
190
  earoup}
```

\tp@extract@generic

```
\def\tp@extract@generic#1#2#3#4{}
```

\tp@print@generic

```
192 \def\tp@print@generic#1{}
```

\tp@expand@l@contents expands the content of the tp@l@<level> macro and contains some code to catch and handle standard LATEX headings. #1 is the content of the tp@1@-macro, #2 is the namespace, #3 is the Component prefix and #4 is the name of the Content component.

```
193 \def\tp@expand@l@contents#1#2#3#4{%
      \global\let\tp@tempa\relax
194
      \label{limits} $$\sum_{0} \left(\frac{def\sum_{0}^{\infty}_{0}}{1}\right)^{0} \cos(\theta)^{0} \\
195
      \left\langle \mathbf{ifdim}\right\rangle \mathbf{vd} = 0
196
197
        \let\numberline\@gobble%
        \protected@csedef{tp@#2@#3#4}{#1}%
198
        \tp@tempa
199
      \else
200
201
        #1%
202
      \fi
      \global\let\tp@tempa\relax
203
204 }
```

Indentation and Left Margins of Potentially Numbered Items

The left margin means the space between the left border of the page area and the imaginary line that multi-line text aligns to. The indent is the offset of the very first line of that block of text relative to that value.

If the indent is a negative value you'll get a hanging indent; if it is positive, you get a paragraph style indent, and if it is set to Opt, you get a clean alignment of the whole item.

CoCoTeX provides a feature that allows the indention of counted elements to be just as wide as the widest Number of the same level (if indent is set to auto), as well as a feature that allows the indent to be as wide as all Numbers of the same cotainer type (if indent is set to auto-global).

The approach to set the indent, margin-left and the position of the Number Component in numbered items such as Headings, entries in ToC and listof-X, captions, etc. is to store the maximum width for each level and the maximum width across all Numbers of a Container Type in the .aux file at the very end of the compilation after it has been constantly updated during the entire LATEX runtime. That way, for the next LATEX run, the maximum values are available immediately and can be used to fortify those parameters.

\tp@store@latest low-level macro that stores the maximum value of a dimension Property #1. An internal Property \#1-local is constantly updated whenever the macro is called and the previously stored value is lower than the one given in #2.

The first call of the macro for a given Property triggers an addendum to the \@enddocumenthook which causes the last value for that dimension to be stored in the .aux file. If the Property hasn't been set from a previous LATEX run or a previous call to the \tp@store@latest macro for the same Property and the same level, it is set to #2.

#1 is the internal name of the property, #2 is the check value.

```
\def\tp@store@latest#1#2{%
205
     \expandafter\ifx\csname tp-\tp@cur@cont-#1\endcsname\relax
206
       \csxdef{tp-\tp@cur@cont-#1}{#2}%
207
208
       \expandafter\ifdim\csname tp-\tp@cur@cont-#1\endcsname<#2\relax
209
         \csxdef{tp-\tp@cur@cont-#1}{#2}%
210
       \fi
211
     \fi
212
     \expandafter\ifx\csname tp-\tp@cur@cont-#1-local\endcsname\relax
213
       \csxdef{tp-\tp@cur@cont-#1-local}{#2}%
214
215
       \expandafter\ifdim\csname tp-\tp@cur@cont-#1-local\endcsname<#2\relax
216
        \csxdef{tp-\tp@cur@cont-#1-local}{#2}%
217
       \fi
218
     \fi
219
```

The second step is to store the highest values in the .aux file for later LaTeX runs. A \write\@auxout command for the storage macro is therefore added to the \@enddocumenthook and a flag is set that indicates that the write command has already been added to the hook, since that needs to be done only once for each to-be-stored dimension.

Note that the value that is eventually stored, is the updated local maximum, not the value that is retrieved at the beginning of the run. This allows the values to be down-graded if the LaTeX source changed during two consecutive runs. However, if values change, you still need to do at least two more LATEX runs before the values stabilize.

```
\ifcsdef{tp-\tp@cur@cont-#1-stored-trigger}{}
220
       {\edef\@tempa{%
221
222
         \noexpand\immediate\noexpand\write\noexpand\@auxout{%
223
           \noexpand\string\noexpand\csgdef{tp-\tp@cur@cont-#1}{%
224
             \noexpand\csname tp-\tp@cur@cont-#1-local\noexpand\endcsname}}}%
225
        \expandafter\AtEndDocument\expandafter{\@tempa}%
        \csgdef{tp-\tp@cur@cont-#1-stored-trigger}{\@empty}}}
226
```

\tp@format@number calculates number widths and prepares macros to be used by the user. #1 is the internal Property prefix, #2 is the user-level Component prefix, #3 is the numerical list level.

```
\def\tp@format@number#1#2#3{%
    \tpSetValProp{#1curr-number-level}{#3}%
228
```

First step: measuring the natural width of the Number if it exists for the current item.

```
229
     \tpIfComp{#2Number}
230
       {\sbox\z@{\tpUseProperty{#1number-format}}}
231
       {\sbox\z@{}}%
```

Second step: we store the width of \box0 if it is wider than the previously stored width for that level. The end value will be written into the .aux file during expansion of the \@enddocumenthook. We do the same for the maximum across all levels of the same Container Type.

```
\tp@store@latest{#1number-#3-maxwd}{\the\wd\z@}%
232
    \tp@store@latest{#1number-maxwd}{\the\wd\z@}%
```

We provide the maximum level as a user-level Property #1number-width-level-max, the global maximum across all levels as #1number-width-max, and the width of the current number as #1number-width.

```
\tpSetValProp{#1number-width-level-max}{\csname tp-\tp@cur@cont-#1number-#3-maxwd\endcsname}%
    \tpSetValProp{#1number-width-max}{\csname tp-\tp@cur@cont-#1number-maxwd\endcsname}%
235
    236
```

Third step: we calculate and fortify the actual #1margin-left (i.e., the overall left indent of the whole item) and #1indent (offset of the first line) of the entry.

```
\tp@get@indent{#1}{#3}%
237
     \tp@set@hang{#1}%
238
239 }
```

\tp@set@hang determines and sets the hanging indent of a counter. #1 is the internal Property prefix.

```
240 \def\tp@set@hang#1{%
```

First, we set the #1hang-number to be an alias of #1number-format as fallback.

```
\tpPropertyLet{#1hang-number}{#1number-format}%
```

Then, we check for #1indent.

```
242
     \tpIfProp{#1indent}
       {\ifdim\tpUseProperty{#1indent}<\z@
```

If it is set and negative, we alter the #1hang-number Property in such a way that it is shifted to the left by #1indent amount and put into a hbox of -#lindent width (remember that the value is negative).

```
\tpSetProperty{#1hang-number}{%
245
         \hskip\tpUseProperty{#1indent}%
         \hbox to -\tpUseProperty{#1indent}{%
246
           \tpIfPropVal{#1number-align}{left}{}{\hss}%
247
248
           \tpUseProperty{#1number-format}%
           249
250
      \fi}{}}
```

In all other cases, we stick to the default (#1number-format) we set in the first step.

\tp@calc@margin@left determines the left margin of the current level by subtracting the current level's indent from the left margin of the next-higher level. "Next-higher" meaning "hierarchically", i.e., the level counter is lower. Remember that for hang indent, the indent is negative, so margin-left grows larger.

#1 is the Property prefix, #2 is the current numerical list level.

```
251 \def\tp@calc@margin@left#1#2{%
252
     \@tempcnta\numexpr#2-1\relax
253
     \expandafter\ifx\csname tp-\tp@cur@cont-#1\the\@tempcnta-margin-left\endcsname\relax
       \@tempdima=-\tpUseProperty{#1indent}\relax%
254
255
     \else
       \@tempdima=\dimexpr\csname tp-\tp@cur@cont-#1\the\@tempcnta-margin-left\endcsname-\
256
           tpUseProperty{#1indent}\relax
     \fi
257
     \tp@store@latest{#1#2-margin-left}{\the\@tempdima}%
258
     \tpSetProperty{#1margin-left}{\the\@tempdima}}
259
```

\tp@get@indent Eventually, write the actually used values for margin-left and indent into the current container's Property list. #1 is the internal property prefix, #2 is the numerical list level.

```
260 \def\tp@get@indent#1#2{%
```

First, we need to store the initial values for both #1margin-left and #1indent since, first their values might be non-dimensional, and second, they will be altered during macro expansion to ultimatly being passed to \hskip.

```
\tpPropertyLetX{int-#1margin-left}{#1margin-left}%
261
     \tpPropertyLetX{int-#1indent}{#1indent}%
262
     \tpIfPropVal{#1indent}{auto-global}
263
```

If #lindent is set to auto-global, the item gets an indent that is set to the negative value of the maximum width of all numbers across all Levels of the same Container Type. The same maximum is added to the user-set value of margin-left.

```
{\tpSetPropertyX{#1indent}{-\tpUseProperty{#1number-width-max}}%
```

If the user has not set margin-left, we set it to $\z0$.

```
\tpIfPropVal{#1margin-left}{}
265
         {\tpSetProperty{int-#1margin-left}{\z@}}
266
         {\tpPropertyLetX{int-#1margin-left}{#1margin-left}}%
267
       \tpSetPropertyX{#1margin-left}{\dimexpr\tpUseProperty{#1number-width-max}+\tpUseProperty{int
268
            -#1margin-left}\relax}}
```

Next, we check if #1margin-left is set to auto.

```
{\tpIfPropVal{int-#1margin-left}{auto}
269
```

If #1margin-left is set to auto, all items of the same level get the same left margin that is determined by the sums of the indents of all higher levels.

```
{\tpIfPropVal{int-#1indent}{auto}
270
```

if #lindent is also set to auto, the indent of the current item is set to the wides Number of the same level.

```
271
            {\tpSetPropertyX{#1indent}{-\tpUseProperty{#1number-width-level-max}}}
```

otherwise it is set to the value of indent, or Opt if it was not set at all.

```
{\tpIfProp{int-#1indent}
272
               {\tpSetPropertyX{#1indent}}\tpUseProperty{int-#1indent}}}
273
               {\tpSetProperty{#1indent}{\z@}}}%
274
```

the final value for margin-left is calculated by the \tp@calc@margin@left macro, above. It will be set to the sum of indent and

```
275
          \tp@calc@margin@left{#1}{#2}}
```

This branch is reached when the left margin is not set to auto.

```
276
         {\tpIfProp{int-#1margin-left}
            {\tpIfPropVal{int-#1indent}{auto}
277
```

If margin-left is set to a specific value and indent is set to auto, set the actual indent to the width of the level's widest Number.

```
278
              {\tpSetPropertyX{#1indent}{-\tpUseProperty{#1number-width-level-max}}}
              {\tpIfProp{int-#1indent}
279
```

Otherwise, if indent is set to a specific width, apply that value, or else set the inden to 0pt.

```
{\tpSetPropertyX{#1indent}}\tpUseProperty{int-#1indent}}}
280
                 {\tpSetProperty{#1indent}{\z@}}}}
281
```

If margin-left is not set,

```
282
           {\tpIfPropVal{int-#1indent}{auto}
```

and indent is set to auto, set margin-left to the width of the level's widest Number and the actual indent to the negative of that.

```
{\tpPropertyLetX{#1margin-left}{#1number-width-level-max}%
283
               \tpSetPropertyX{#1indent}{-\tpUseProperty{#1number-width-level-max}}}
284
              {\tpIfProp{int-#1indent}
285
```

If margin-left is not set, and indent is set to a specific value, apply that value for indent and set margin-left to Opt. In this branch, indent should have a positive value, otherwise the content would probably lap over the left edge of the type area.

```
{\tpSetPropertyX{#1indent}{\tpUseProperty{int-#1indent}}%
286
287
                 \tpSetProperty{#1margin-left}{\z@}}
```

otherwise set both indent nad margin-left to Opt.

```
288
                 {\tpSetProperty{#1indent}{\z@}%
289
                 \tpSetProperty{#1margin-left}{\z@}}}}}}
```

Label generation and selection

\tpSetBabelLabel defined a language-dependent string macro for German and English varieties. #1 is the language, #2 is the internal reference name, and #3 is the language specific label.

```
290 \def\tpSetBabelLabel#1#2#3{%
     \def\@lang{#1}%
291
     \expandafter\def\expandafter\@tempa\expandafter\\expandafter\def\csname #2name\endcsname{#3}}%
292
293
     \ifdefstring\@lang{german}{%
294
       \expandafter\addto\expandafter\captionsgerman\expandafter{\@tempa}%
295
       \expandafter\addto\expandafter\captionsngerman\expandafter{\@tempa}%
296
     }{%
297
       \ifdefstring\@lang{english}{%
298
        \expandafter\addto\expandafter\captionsbritish\expandafter{\@tempa}%
```

```
\verb|\expandafter| add to \verb|\expandafter| captions UK english \verb|\expandafter| {\tt \expandafter}| % add to $\tt \expandafter| add t
299
                                                                    \expandafter\addto\expandafter\captionsenglish\expandafter{\@tempa}%
300
301
                                                                    \expandafter\addto\expandafter\captionsamerican\expandafter{\@tempa}%
302
                                                                     \expandafter\addto\expandafter\captionsUSenglish\expandafter{\@tempa}%
303
                                                     }{}}}
```

3.5 Link Generation

\tpCompLink creates a hyperlink with the target taken from Component with the name #1 and the label #2.

```
304 \def\tpCompLink#1#2{%
   305
   \verb|\expandafter| href| expandafter{@argi}{#2}% \\
306
307 }
```

\tpPageLabel enables referencing pages via ??y using to create a hyperref anchor for label #1.

```
308 \def\tpPageLabel#1{\phantomsection\label{#1}}
```

```
309 %</common>
```

Modul 4

coco-accessibility.dtx

This file provides code for the interaction between the CoCoTeX framwork and the ltpfdfa package.

Please consider this module as highly experimental!

There are two files created from this dtx: one coco-accessibility.sty and one coco-accessibility.lua.

1 LaTeX code

```
24 %<*a11y-sty>
```

1.1 General Processing

The coco-accessibility.sty starts with some general package information like name, current version and date of last changes.

\tp@if@ally If the coco-ally package is loaded, the conditional from the coco-common module is re-defined to always expand the true branch and discard the false branch:

```
35 \def\tp@if@ally{\expandafter\@firstoftwo}
```

The ltpdfa package is a hard requirement for the accessibility features of CoCoT_EX:

```
36 \RequirePackage[pdftex,pdflang=De]{ltpdfa}%,nodetree,dospaces,doparas,,debug
```

The local preferences for CoCoTeX's accessibility features is done via the tpMeta environment. Therefore, we hook the necessary Components and Properties right into the titlepage container. Therefore, coco-title.sty is a hard requirement for CoCoTeX's accessibility module:

```
37 \RequirePackage{coco-title}%
```

1.2 Lua injection

Some features are realized by Lua code, so we tell LuaLaTeX to include the code that is generated from material later in this source file:

```
\directlua{ally = require('coco-accessibility')}
```

XMP Integration

The first feature of coco-ally is the integration of XMP meta data into the output PDF. Note that XMP integration is also a built-in feature of the coco-title module. The following code provides a superior alternative to that via the ltpdfa package.

\tp@title@insert@xmp is an override of the same macro in coco-title.sty (see. Sect. 2.4). If the ally document option is set, XMP inclusion is done via the ltpdfa package.

First we check if the specified xmp file exists. If it exists, the DocumentInfo is extracted from the XMP file. Otherwise, we set the DocumentInfo from the contents of the titlepage Container and let ltpdfa generate the xmp file.

```
39
  \def\tp@title@insert@xmp{%
    \edef\tp@xmp@file@name{\tpUseGComp{titlepage}{XmpFile}.xmp}%
40
    \IfFileExists{\tp@xmp@file@name}
41
42
      {\addToConfig{metadata}{xmpfile=\tp@xmp@file@name}%
       \directlua{ally.meta.extract()}}
43
      {\tpPackageWarning{A11y}{File}{%
44
45 \tp@xmp@file@name\space not found.^^J
46 Note that the ltpdfa package will create one^^J
47 from the Components given in the tpMeta Container.}}}
```

Output Intent and ICC Profiles

First, we declare some Components that represent the three necessary parameters for the output intent:

```
\tpAddToType{Components}{titlepage}{%
```

Component titlepage::IccProfileFile holds the path (relative to the main tex file) and name of the .icc file.

```
\tpDeclareGComp{IccProfileFile}
```

Component titlepage::IccComponents holds the number of components in the color profile

```
\tpDeclareGComp{IccComponents}
```

Compoent titlepage::IccIdentifier holds the identifier of the color profile

```
\tpDeclareGComp{IccIdentifier}}
```

The Components are composed via a new Property output-intent which we add to coco-title's Properties list:

```
\tpAddToType{Properties}{titlepage}{%
```

Property titlepage::output-intent sends the output intent information to the ltpdfa package. It must contain of three data fields:

profile with the name of the to-be-embedded .icc file,

componetns with an integer telling the pdfwriter how many values are coded by each color (e.g., 4 for cmyk, 3 for rgb)

identifier with the identifying name of the profile (e.g., Coated FOGRA39 for the included cmyk profile, etc.)

```
\tpSetProperty{output-intent}{%
53
       profile=\tpIfComp{IccProfileFile}{\tpUseComp{IccProfileFile}}{suppl/\tp@color@enc.icc};%
54
       components = \texttt{tpIfComp}\{IccComponents\}\{\texttt{tpUseComp}\{IccComponents\}\}\{\texttt{tifdefstring}\texttt{tp@color@enc}\{\texttt{tomponents}\}\}\}\}
55
            cmyk{4}{3}};%
       identifier=\tpIfComp{IccIdentifier}{\tpUseComp{IccIdentifier}}{\ifdefstring\tp@color@enc{
56
            cmyk}{Coated FOGRA39}{sRGB IEC61966-2.1}}%
57
    }}
```

The Component Handler which links the new Components to that Property is added to titlepage's document-meta-

```
\tpAddToHook[titlepage]{\document-meta-hook}{\\edef\x{\noexpand\\addToConfig{intent}}\\tpUseProperty
    {output-intent}}\x}
```

Transformation of Typographic Unicode characters

In order for screen readers to work correctly, some unicode characters that mask purely typographic glyphs (e.g., ligatures) need to be mapped to their underlaying orthographic characters. This is done via pdftex's glyphtounicode tables:

```
59 \protected\def\pdfglyphtounicode{\pdfextension glyphtounicode}
60 \input glyphtounicode
61 \edef\pdfgentounicode{\pdfvariable gentounicode}
62 \pdfgentounicode = 1
```

1.6 Encoding of the PDF-A Conformance

As before, the parameters for the PDF conformity level are encoded via specific Components in the titlepage Container:

```
63 \tpAddToType{Components}{titlepage}{%
  Compoent PDFAID::d efines the PDF/A ID (Default: 2, meaning: PDF/A-2)
    \tpDeclareGComp[2]{PDFAID}%
```

```
Compoent PDFALevel::d efines the PDF/A Level (Default: A, meaning PDF/A-2A)
 \tpDeclareGComp[A]{PDFALevel}%
```

Componet PDFUAID:: d efines the PDF standard (Default: 1, meaning: PDF/UA-1). Use \tpPDFUAID{} (i.e. set it to nothing) to make the document conform to the PDF/A standard, but not to the PDF/UA standard.

```
\tpDeclareGComp[1]{PDFUAID}}%
```

The checking if the values are valid, and the separation of the various parts of the standard is done via a lua script in the document-meta-hook. The conformance DocumentInfo nodes are only written, if neither PDFAID, nor PDFALevel is empty.

```
67 \tpAddToHook[titlepage] { document-meta-hook} {%
    \tpIfCompEmpty{PDFAID}{}{\tpIfCompEmpty{PDFALevel}{}{%
68
69
        \edef\x{\noexpand\setDocInfo{conformance}{%
           pdfaid=\tpUseComp{PDFAID};%
70
71
           level=\tpUseComp{PDFALevel}%
           \tpIfCompEmpty{PDFUAID}{}{;pdfuaid=\tpUseComp{PDFUAID}}}}%
72
73
        \{x\}
```

Automatic PDF Tagging

Document Root Node

The following code causes the ltpdfa package to tag the document environment as the structural representation's root node:

```
74 \AtBeginShipout{\directlua{ltpdfa.pageprocessor(tex.box["AtBeginShipoutBox"])}}%
```

Some environments must not be auto-tagged by ltpdfa!

```
75 \tpIfAlly{%
   \ltOmitEnv{tpMeta}
76
    \ltOmitEnv{tpAuthor}
77
    \ltOmitEnv{tpEditor}
78
79
    \ltOmitEnv{tpSeriesEditor}
    \ltOmitEnv{tpAffil}
    \ltOmitEnv{tpFunding}
81
    \ltOmitEnv{heading}
82
83 }{}
```

End of TEX source code.

```
%</a11y-sty>
85 | %<*a11y-lua>
```

2 Lua code

2.1 Local Variables and Tables

1tpdfa is an instance of the 1tpdfa Lua table.

```
86 local ltpdfa = require('ltpdfa')
```

2.2 Meta Data Extraction

meta is a table that holds the metadata that are extracted from the \jobname.xmp file via its extract member.

```
87 local meta = {
```

```
Author = '',
88
    Title = ''
89
    Creator = ''
90
91
    Producer = '',
    Keywords = '',
```

The method meta.extract() reads the meta data from the \jobname.xmp and stores certain values to be accessed by LaTeX. This is used to fill the DocumentInfo when a xmp file is available during the expansion of \tp@write@pdf@meta from the coco-title module (see Sect. 2).

```
extract = function ()
93
      local xmpfile = ltpdfa.metadata.xmphandler.fromFile(ltpdfa.config.metadata.xmpfile)
94
      local f = io.open(xmpfile, "r")
95
      local content = f:read("*all")
96
      f:close()
97
98
      if (content:find('<dc:title>')) then
       Title = content:gsub('.*<dc:title>[^<]*<rdf:Alt>[^<]*<rdf:li[^>]*>(.*)</rdf:li>[^<]*</rdf:
99
           Alt>[^<]*</dc:title>.*', "%1")
       -- log(">>>" .. meta.Title)
100
101
      end
102
      local authors
      local author = {}
103
      if (content:find('<dc:creator>')) then
104
       105
       for k in string.gmatch(authors, "<rdf:li>([^>]+)</rdf:li>") do
106
107
         table.insert(author , k)
108
109
       Author = table.concat(author, ', ')
      end
110
111
    end
112 }
```

Public Methods

cocotex is the base table that contains all public methods and sub-tables available in the CoCoTeX framework. Here, it is defined unless it is already defined elsewhere.

```
if type(cocotex) ~= 'table' then
   cocotex = {}
114
115 end
```

cocotex.ally is a globally available namespace for coco-accessibility specific lua tables.

```
116 cocotex.ally = {
117
    meta = meta
118 }
```

After loading coco-accessibility.lua via the require() method, a cocotex.ally table is returned.

```
119 return cocotex.ally
```

no more lua code.

```
120 %</a11y-lua>
```

Modul 5

coco-meta.dtx

This file provides some macros that are used to process meta data, both for the whole document, as well as parts of a document.

File preamble

Container CommonMeta is an abstract Container for commonly used meta data, both for whole documents as well as parts of documents.

```
36 \tpDeclareContainer{CommonMeta}{%
37 \tpDeclareType{Components}{%
38 \tpDeclareRole[author]{Author}%
39 \tp@declare@common@meta@comp
40 \tp@extended@common@meta@macros
41 \tp@declare@meta@affils
42 }%
43 \tpDeclareType{Properties}{}%
44 }
```

1 Counted Container Handlers

1.1 Generic Blocks

\tp@meta@generic@comp is used to define a generic meta data block. It provides two Components for each instance, one for the block's Heading and one for its Content.

```
\def\tp@meta@generic@comp{%

tpDeclareComp{GenericMetaBlock}{\expandafter\global}{}%

tpDeclareComponentGroup{tpGenericMeta}{%

   \tpDeclareCountedComp{Heading}%

   \tpDeclareCountedComp{Content}%

}
```

\tp@meta@generic@eval evaluates the Components and tells the Framework how the generic counted Sub-Containers should be rendered.

```
51 \def\tp@meta@generic@eval{{%
52 \def\tp@cur@cont{titlepage}%
53 \tpComposeCollection{tpGenericMeta}{generic-meta-format}{GenericMetaBlock}
54 }}
```

1.2 Contributor Roles

Contributors are counted sub-containers that represent the meta-data of people that share a role in contributing content to a document. Examples for such roles are an article/chapter/book's authors, or a collection/series' editors.

\tpDeclareRole is used to declare the Components that belong to each member of a contributor role. #2 is the name of the role, optional #1 is the internal name of the Role's formatting Property. If omitted, it is the same as #2.

The output of all members of a role is controlled by a Component called "<role>NameList" that is formatted according to the <role>-format Property. For reasons of naming conventions, the role names for a Component and its respective Property do not necessarily need to be identical.

```
55 \def\tpDeclareRole{\tp@opt@second\tp@declare@role}%
56 \def\tp@declare@role[#1]#2{%
57
        \tpDeclareComponentGroup{tp#2}{%
            \tpDeclareCountedComp{FullName}%
58
            \tpDeclareCountedComp{CiteName}%
59
            \tpDeclareCountedComp{ShortCiteName}%
60
            \tpDeclareCountedComp{PDFInfoName}%
61
62
            \tpDeclareCountedComp{Initial}%
            \tpDeclareCountedComp{LastName}%
63
            \tpDeclareCountedComp{FirstName}%
64
65
            \tpDeclareCountedComp{MidName}%
            \tpDeclareCountedComp{Honorific}%
66
            \tpDeclareCountedComp{Lineage}%
67
            \tpDeclareCountedComp{ORCID}%
68
69
            \tpDeclareCountedComp{AffilRef}% for references to the tpAffil Group
70
            \tpDeclareCountedComp{Affiliation}% for affiliations as direct tpAuthor meta data
            \tpDeclareCountedComp{Email}%
71
            \tpDeclareCountedComp{CorrespondenceAs}%
72
        }%
73
        \tpGroupHandler{tp#2}{%
74
            \tpIfComp{FullName}{}{\tpFullName{\tpUseProperty{#1-full-name-format}}}%
75
            \tpIfComp{Initial}{}{\tpUseProperty{initials-format}}}%
76
            \tpIfComp{CiteName}{}{\tpUseProperty{#1-cite-name-format}}}%
77
78
            \tpIfComp{ShortCiteName}{}{\tpShortCiteName{\tpUseProperty{#1-short-cite-name-format}}}%
79
            \tpIfComp{PDFInfoName}{}\tpPDFInfoName{\tpUseProperty{#1-pdfinfo-name-format}}}%
            \label{thm:correspondenceAs} $$ \left( \sup_{c \in \mathbb{R}} {\left( \sup_{c \in \mathbb{R}} \right) \in \mathbb{R}^{n}} \right) $$ is the property $$ (a) $$ is the property $$ (a) $$ (b) $$ (b) $$ (b) $$ (c) $$ (c
80
                    }}}%
81
            \tpIfComp{AffilRef}{\tpIfComp{Affiliation}{%
82
                   \tpPackageError{Meta}{Ambiguity}
83
                       {You cannot use both Containers \string\tpAffilRef\space and \string\tpAffiliation\
                               space in the same 'tp#2' Sub-Container}
                      {At least one 'tp#2' Sub-Container contains both \string\tpAffilRef\space and \string\
84
                               tpAffiliation. This is not allowed. Please decide for one affiliation strategy:
                               Either two lists with cross-references, or affiliations directly as an author's
                               meta-data.}}{}}{}%
85
        }%
        \tpDeclareRoleBlock{#2}{NameList}{#1-list-print-format}%
86
87
        \tpDeclareRoleBlock{#2}{CitationList}{#1-list-cite-format}%
       \tpDeclareRoleBlock{#2}{ShortCitationList}{#1-list-short-cite-format}%
```

```
\tpDeclareRoleBlock[apply]{#2}{PDFInfo}{#1-list-pdfinfo-format}%
90
    \tpDeclareRoleBlock{#2}{Correspondence}{#1-list-correspondence-format}%
91 }
```

\tpAddToRole appends another Component declaration block #2 to a pre-defined Role #1.

```
92 \def\tpAddToRole#1#2{%
93
    \csgappto{@tp#1@hook}{#2}%
94 }
```

\tpDeclareRoleBlock is used to create a new output container (named \tp#2#3) for a given Role #2. A Role Block is a Component of the parent Container which contains certain Components of all members of the Role within its parent Container. Format and selection of the utilised Components are specified via the Property given in #4. The optional argument #1 tells the evaluator in the Container's end macro how the collector is to be composed. Valid values are compose (default) or apply.

```
95 \ \def\tpDeclareRoleBlock{\@ifnextchar[\tp@declare@role@block{\tp@declare@role@block[compose]}}%]
   \def\tp@declare@role@block[#1]#2#3#4{%
97
     \ifcsdef{tp@meta@role@#1}
       {\tpDeclareComp{#2#3}{\expandafter\global}{}%
98
        \csgdef{tp@meta@role@\tp@cur@cont @#2@#3}{#4}%
       \csappto{@tp@meta@role@eval@\tp@cur@cont @#2}
100
          {\csname tp@meta@role@#1\endcsname{#2}{#3}}}
101
       {\tpPackageError{Meta}{Argument}
102
103
        {Invalid optional argument in \string\tpDeclareRoleBlock!}
        {Only 'apply' or 'compose' are allowed as values^^Jin the optional argument of \string\
104
             tpDeclareRoleBlock!}}}%
```

\tp@meta@role@eval creates the name lists for the role. #1 is the name of the role.

```
105 \def\tp@meta@role@eval#1{\csname @tp@meta@role@eval@\tp@cur@cont @#1\endcsname}
```

\@tp@meta@role@eval #1 is the name of the macro used to compose the Collection (either \tpComposeCollection, or \tpApplyCollection), #2 is the name of the role and #3 is the name of the list. The access Component is #2#3, i.e., both argumets together.

```
\def\@tp@meta@role@eval#1#2#3{%
```

First, we check if the Collection Component has already been set in the input. If so, we set an internal flag to indicate that the Collection Component has been filled manually.

```
\tpIfComp{#2#3}{\cslet{tp@used@#2#3@override}\@empty}{%
```

Second, we check if the counter for the Role is defined and greater than 0. If neither is the case, this means that the Group does not occur in the input, at all, so we don't need to do anything.

```
\ifcsdef{tp#2Cnt}
108
         {\expandafter\ifnum\csname tp#2Cnt\endcsname>\z@
109
```

otherwise, we call the Property that is stored in \tp@meta@role@\tp@cur@cont @#2@#3 and store the result in the Component #2#3.

```
110
            #1{tp#2}{\csname tp@meta@role@\tp@cur@cont @#2@#3\endcsname}{#2#3}%
          \fi
111
         }{}}}
112
```

\tp@meta@role@apply #1 is the name of the role and #2 is the name of the composition. This macro applies (i.e. fully expands) the \tp@meta@role@\tp@cur@cont @#1@#2 Property and stores the result in the #1#2 Component.

```
113 \def\tp@meta@role@apply#1#2{\@tp@meta@role@eval\tpApplyCollection{#1}{#2}}
```

\tp@meta@role@compose #1 is the name of the role and #2 is the name of the composition. This stores the unexpaded contents of the \tp@meta@role@\tp@cur@cont @#1@#2 Property in the #1#2 Component.

```
114 \def\tp@meta@role@compose#1#2{\@tp@meta@role@eval\tpComposeCollection{#1}{#2}}
```

Labeled Components 2

\tpDeclareLabeledComp declares two Components: one named \csname tp#2\endcsname for the value and another one named \csname tp#2Label\endcsname for its corresponding label. #3 is used for property overrides. The optional Argument #1 allows to set a default value for the Label.

```
115 \def\tpDeclareLabeledComp{\tp@opt@empty\tp@declare@labeled@comp}
116 \def\tp@declare@labeled@comp[#1]#2#3{%
     \tpDeclareComp{#2}{\expandafter\global}{}%
117
     \tpDeclareComp{#2Label}{\expandafter\global}{}%
118
119
     \csxdef{labeled-meta-property-infix-\tp@cur@cont-#2}{#3}%
120
     \mathbf{if}!#1!\else
       \long\csgdef{tp@\tp@cur@cont @#2Label}{#1}%
121
122
     \fi
123 }
```

\tpUseLabeledComp declares two Components: one named \csname tp#1\endcsname for the value and another one named \csname tp#1Label\endcsname for its corresponding label. An optional Argument allows to set a default value for the Label.

```
124 \def\tpUseLabeledComp#1{%
     \tpIfComp{#1}{%
```

\tpCurInfix stores the currently active property infix for the Labeled Component

```
\letcs\tpCurInfix{labeled-meta-property-infix-\tp@cur@cont-#1}%
```

\tpCurComp stores the currently active Component name

```
\def\tpCurComp{#1}%
127
       \tpIfProp{labeled-meta-\tpCurInfix-format}
128
         {\tpUseProperty{labeled-meta-\tpCurInfix-format}}
129
130
         {\tpUseProperty{labeled-meta-format}}%
131
     }{}}
```

common meta data

```
\def\tp@declare@common@meta@comp{%
132
       \tpDeclareComp{Copyright}{\expandafter\global}{}% Copyright text
133
       \tpDeclareComp{DOI}{\expandafter\global}{}% DOI
134
   }%
135
```

\tp@extended@common@meta@macros provides some extended markup. Some headings use these Components for compilations of contributions by different authors. They are also loaded by article title pages.

```
136 \def\tp@extended@common@meta@macros{%
     \tpDeclareLabeledComp[Abstract]{Abstract}{abstract}%
137
     \tpDeclareLabeledComp[Keywords]{Keywords}{keyword}%
138
     \tpDeclareLabeledComp{DOI}{doi}%
139
     \tpDeclareLabeledComp{TitleEn}{title-en}%
140
141 }
```

3.1 **Affiliations**

\tp@meta@affils is a wrapper that creates the user-level macros for the affiliations.

```
\def\tp@declare@meta@affils{%
142
143
     \tpDeclareComp{AffilBlock}{\expandafter\global}{}%
     \tpDeclareComponentGroup{tpAffil}{%
144
       \tpDeclareCountedComp{Affiliation}%
145
       \tpDeclareCountedComp{Address}%
146
       \tpDeclareCountedComp{Institute}%
147
148
       \tpDeclareCountedComp{Country}%
149
       \tpDeclareCountedComp{Department}%
       \tpDeclareCountedComp{AffilID}%
150
151
152
     \tpGroupHandler{tpAffil}{%
       \tpIfComp{AffilID}{}{\expandafter\tpAffilID\expandafter\tpAffilCnt}}%
153
       \tpIfComp{Affiliation}{}\tpAffiliation{\tpUseProperty{affiliation-format}}}%
154
     }%
155
156 }
```

Defaut Property settings for the Meta Container.

```
\tpAddToDefault{CommonMeta}{%
157
158
     \tpSetProperty{initials-format}{%
       \expandafter\ifx\csname tp@\tp@cur@cont @\tp@cnt@grp-FirstName-\the\tpCurCount\endcsname\
159
           long@empty\else
        \expandafter\ifx\csname tp@\tp@cur@cont @\tp@cnt@grp-FirstName-\the\tpCurCount\endcsname\
160
            relax\else
          \expandafter\expandafter\@car\csname tp@\tp@cur@cont @\tp@cnt@grp-FirstName-\
161
              the\tpCurCount\endcsname\relax\@nil\tpUseProperty{initials-period}%
162
        \expandafter\ifx\csname tp@\tp@cur@cont @\tp@cnt@grp-MidName-\the\tpCurCount\endcsname\
            long@empty\else
163
          \expandafter\ifx\csname tp@\tp@cur@cont @\tp@cnt@grp-MidName-\the\tpCurCount\endcsname\
              relax\else
            \tpUseProperty{initials-sep}%
164
            \expandafter\expandafter\expandafter\@car\csname tp@\tp@cur@cont @\tp@cnt@grp-MidName-\
165
                the\tpCurCount\endcsname\relax\@nil\tpUseProperty{initials-period}%
          \fi\fi
166
167
       \fi\fi
168
169
     \tpSetProperty{initials-sep}{~}
170
    \tpSetProperty{initials-period}{.}
```

```
171
172
           %% Properties that control how the composed compoents WITHIN each item in a Role are formatted:
173
174
            \tpSetProperty{role-full-name-format}{%
175
                \if\tpUseComp{Honorific}\relax
176
                \else
177
                     \tpUseComp{Honorific}\space
178
179
                 \tpUseComp{FirstName}\space
180
                 \if\tpUseComp{MidName}\relax
181
                 \else
182
                     \tpUseComp{MidName}\space
                 \fi
183
184
                 \tpUseComp{LastName}%
185
                \if\tpUseComp{Lineage}\relax
186
187
                     \space\tpUseComp{Lineage}%
188
                \fi%
189
            }% How FullName for each name is built
190
            \tpSetProperty{role-cite-name-format}{\tpIfComp{LastName}{\tpUseComp{LastName},~\tpUseComp{
                      Initial}}{\tpUseComp{FullName}}}% How CiteName for each name is built
191
            \tpSetProperty{role-short-cite-name-format}{\tpUseComp{LastName}}% how ShortCiteName for each name
                         is built
            \tpPropertyLet{role-pdfinfo-name-format}{role-cite-name-format}% How PDFInfoName for each item is
192
            \tpSetProperty{role-correspondence-as-format}{\tpUseComp{Email}}% How PDFInfoName for each item is
193
                        built
194
           %% Properties that control how the single items in a compoent list are formatted:
            \tpSetProperty{role-block-print-format}{\tpUseComp{FullName}\ifnum\tpCurCount<\tpTotalCount\</pre>
195
                       tpUseProperty{counted-name-sep}\fi}% How <Role>NameList for each name is build
            \tpSetProperty{role-block-cite-format}{\tpUseComp{CiteName}\ifnum\tpCurCount<\tpTotalCount\
196
                       tpUse Property \{ counted-name-sep \} \\ \textbf{fi} \} \% \ \ \text{How each item in Component } \\ < Role > Citation List is formatted \} \\ + Cit
197
            \tpSetProperty{role-block-short-cite-format}{\tpUseComp{ShortCiteName}\ifnum\tpCurCount<\
                       tpTotalCount\tpUseProperty{counted-name-sep}\fi}% How each item in the Component <Role>
                       ShortCitationList is formatted
            \tpSetProperty{role-block-pdfinfo-format}{\tpUseComp{PDFInfoName}\ifnum\tpCurCount<\</pre>
198
                       tpTotalCount\tpUseProperty{counted-name-sep}\fi}% How each item in the Component <Role>PDFInfo
                       is formatted
            \tpSetProperty{role-block-correspondence-format}{%
199
                 \tpIfAttrIsset{\tp@cnt@grp-\the\tpCurCount}{corresp}
200
201
                     {\ifx\is@first@corresp\relax
202
                           \tpUseProperty{corresp-sep}%
                       \else
203
                           \global\let\is@first@corresp\relax
204
                       \fi
205
                       \tpUseComp{CorrespondenceAs}%
206
207
                  }{}}% How each item in the Component <Role>Correspondence is formatted
208
           % Aliasses
            % for Role "Author":
209
            \tpPropertyLet{author-cite-name-format} {role-cite-name-format}%
210
211
             \tpPropertyLet{author-short-cite-name-format} {role-short-cite-name-format}%
            \tpPropertyLet{author-full-name-format} {role-full-name-format}%
212
            \tpPropertyLet{author-pdfinfo-name-format} {role-pdfinfo-name-format}%
213
            \tpPropertyLet{author-correspondence-as-format} {role-correspondence-as-format}%
214
215
            \tpPropertyLet{author-list-print-format} {role-block-print-format}%
216
217
            \tpPropertyLet{author-list-cite-format} {role-block-cite-format}%
218
            \tpPropertyLet{author-list-short-cite-format} {role-block-short-cite-format}%
            \label{lem:list-pdfinfo-format} $$ \{role-block-pdfinfo-format\} $$ {role-block-pdfinfo-format} $$ $$ (formall formall formall
219
            \tpPropertyLet{author-list-correspondence-format} {role-block-correspondence-format}%
220
221
```

```
\tpSetProperty{counted-name-sep}{,\space}%
222
223
     \tpSetProperty{name-and}{\space and\space}%
     \tpSetProperty{name-etal}{\space et~al.}%
224
225
     \tpSetProperty{name-sep}{,\space}%
226
     \tpSetProperty{corresp-mark}{*}%
227
     \tpSetProperty{corresp-sep}{,\space}%
228
229
     % Affiliation Properties
230
231
     \tpSetProperty{affiliation-format}{% Format of the affiliation block
232
       \tpIfComp{Institute}{\tpUseComp{Institute}}{}
233
       \tpIfComp{Department}{, \tpUseComp{Department}}{}%
234
       \tpIfComp{Address}{, \tpUseComp{Address}}{}%
235
     }%
236
     \tpSetProperty{affil-sep}{\par}
237
     \tpSetProperty{affil-block-item-face}{}% Font of a single item in the affiliation list
238
     \tpSetProperty{affil-block-item-format}{% Format of a single item in the affiliation list
239
       \textsuperscript{\tpUseComp{AffilID}}%
240
       \baroup
241
         \tpUseProperty{affil-block-item-face}%
242
         \tpUseComp{Affiliation}
243
       \egroup%
       \ifnum\tpCurCount<\tpTotalCount\relax\tpUseProperty{affil-sep}\fi%</pre>
244
245
     \tpSetProperty{affil-block-face}{\small\normalfont}%
246
     \tpSetProperty{affil-block-format}{%
247
248
       \tpIfComp{AffilBlock}
249
         {\bgroup
250
           \tpUseProperty{affil-block-face}%
           \tpUseComp{AffilBlock}%
251
252
         \egroup
253
         \par
254
        }{}}
255
256
     % Labeled Meta Properties
257
     \tpSetProperty{labeled-meta-format}{%
258
259
       \tpIfProp{labeled-meta-before-\tpCurInfix}
         {\tpUseProperty{labeled-meta-before-\tpCurInfix}}
260
         {\tpUseProperty{labeled-meta-before}}%
261
       \bgroup
262
263
         \tpIfProp{labeled-meta-\tpCurInfix-face}
           {\tpUseProperty{labeled-meta-\tpCurInfix-face}}
264
           {\tpUseProperty{labeled-meta-face}}%
265
         \tpIfProp{labeled-meta-\tpCurInfix-label-format}
266
267
           {\tpUseProperty{labeled-meta-\tpCurInfix-label-format}}
           {\tpUseProperty{labeled-meta-label-format}}%
268
269
         \tpUseComp{\tpCurComp}%
270
       \egroup
       \tpIfProp{labeled-meta-after-\tpCurInfix}
271
272
         {\tpUseProperty{labeled-meta-after-\tpCurInfix}}
         {\tpUseProperty{labeled-meta-after}}%
273
274
     \tpSetProperty{labeled-meta-label-format}{%
275
276
       \tpIfComp{\tpCurComp Label}{%
         \bgroup
277
278
          \tpUseProperty{labeled-meta-before-\tpCurInfix-label}%
279
          \tpIfProp{labeled-meta-\tpCurInfix-label-face}
280
            {\tpUseProperty{labeled-meta-\tpCurInfix-label-face}}
            {\tpUseProperty{labeled-meta-label-face}}%
281
282
          \tpUseComp{\tpCurComp Label}%
```

```
\tpIfProp{labeled-meta-\tpCurInfix-label-sep}
283
            {\tpUseProperty{labeled-meta-\tpCurInfix-label-sep}}
284
285
            {\tpUseProperty{labeled-meta-label-sep}}%
286
        \egroup
287
      }{}}
     \tpSetProperty{labeled-meta-label-face}{\bfseries}
288
     \tpSetProperty{labeled-meta-label-sep}{:\enskip}
289
     \tpSetProperty{labeled-meta-face}{}
290
291
     \tpSetProperty{labeled-meta-before}{}
     \tpSetProperty{labeled-meta-after}{\par}
292
293 }
```

294 %</meta>

Part II

Document Level Structures

Modul 6

32

33

34

coco-headings.dtx

This module provides handlers for headings like parts, chapters, sections, or inline headings common to all CoCoTeX projects.

Headings are handled differently with <code>cocotex.cls</code> compared to standard LaTeX, since cocotex manuscripts tend to have a whole collection of additional information that are pressed into the headings, like subtitles or section authors down to subsection level, etc. Therefore, the <code>\@startsection</code> and <code>\@make[s]chapterhead</code> facilities from LaTeX are no longer sufficient. At the same time, the package does not redefine those macros and keeps them available for backwards compatibility.

First, we load the bookmark package:

\NeedsTeXFormat{LaTeX2e}[2018/12/01]

[2024/01/29 0.4.0 CoCoTeX headings module]

\ProvidesPackage{coco-headings}

35 \RequirePackage{coco-meta}

```
36 \RequirePackage{bookmark}%
```

Since we use our own heading levels, we disable all automatically generated bookmarks.

```
37 \hypersetup{bookmarksdepth=-999}%
```

1 Facility for declaring heading levels and their layouts

Container heading

```
38 \tpDeclareContainer{heading}{%
39 \tpInherit{Components,Properties}{CommonMeta}%
40 \tpDeclareType{Components}{%
```

We already have the Author Component inherited from the CommonMeta Container. We therefore just need to declare the overrides.

```
11 \tp@heading@authors%
```

The remaining Components are built as usual.

```
\tp@provide@hd@macros{Title}%
42
      \tp@provide@hd@macros{Subtitle}%
43
44
      \tp@provide@hd@macros{Number}%
      \tp@provide@hd@macros{LicenceLogo}%
45
46
      \tp@provide@hd@macros{LicenceName}%
47
      \tp@heading@quotes
48
49
    \tpDeclareType{Properties}{}%
50
    \tpDeclareEnv{\heading}{\endheading}%
51 }
```

\tpDeclareHeading is the user-level macro to declare new headings.

- #1 (optional) inherit-from: load all properties from that heading level, first.
- #2 level: used for toc entries. -1 for part, 0 for chapter, 1 for section, etc.
- #3 name: part, chapter, section, etc, to be used in toc, head lines, bookmarks, etc.
- #4 Property definitions and switches

```
52 \long\def\tpDeclareHeading{\tp@opt@empty\@tpDeclareHeading}
53 \long\def\@tpDeclareHeading[#1]#2#3#4{%
```

First, we check if the heading has already been declared.

```
\ifcsdef{tp@container@#3}{%
```

If yes, then we check if the new declaration's parameters match with the pre-existing one. We start with the heading level.

```
\tpPackageInfo{Headings}{}{Appending to '#3'}%
55
      \ifcsstring{tp@hdg@#3@level}{#2}{}{%
56
57
         \tpPackageError{Headings}
           {Level Mismatch}
58
           {Level of heading '#3' cannot be altered!}
59
           {The already existing heading '#3' has toc level '\csname tp@hdg@#3@level\endcsname',
60
                but your ^ 1%
            re-declaration states '#2'.^^J%
61
62
            ۸۸ ]%
63
            Consider declaring a new heading alltogether with '#3' as parent, ^^J%
            or add Properties to '#3' using \string\tpAddToType\string{Properties\string}\string
64
                 {#3\string}.}%
        }%
65
```

we also check the parent.

```
if!#1!else
66
       \ifcsstring{tp@parent@#3}{#1}{}{%
67
         \tpPackageError{Headings}
68
           {Parent Mismatch}
69
           {Parent of heading '#3'^^J cannot be altered!}
70
           {The already existing heading '#3' inherits from '\csname tp@parent@#3\endcsname',^^J%
71
72
            but your re-declaration sets Parent to '#1'.^^J%
73
74
            Consider declaring a new heading alltogether with '#1' as parent.}%
       }%
75
      \fi
76
```

and finally pass the new Properties to the existing heading.

```
\tpAddToType{Properties}{#3}{#4}%
```

Finally, we need to re-define the \tpUseHeading macro so that changes to the heading's Property list will be taken into account for all dependend constructions like list-ofs and toc-entries.

```
78
      \tp@declare@heading{#2}{#3}%
    }{%
79
```

If the heading does not already exist, we build a new one.

Each new heading constitutes its own Sub-Container of the heading Container. The name of this Sub-Container is the headings name.

```
\tpDeclareContainer{#3}{%
80
81
        \csgdef{tp@hdg@#3@level}{#2}%
        \tpPackageInfo{Headings}{}{Declaring heading '#3'}%
82
        \edef\@argi{#1}%
83
        \tpDeclareType{Parent}{\tp@heading@create@parent{#1}{#3}}
84
```

We inherit everything from the heading levels parent, or from the default heading if no parent is present.

```
\ifx\@argi\@empty
85
          \tpInherit{Components,Properties}{heading}%
86
87
88
          \tpInherit{Components,Properties,Parent}{#1}%
89
        \fi
```

The main body of the heading Declaration is a list of Property definitions which we append to the Sub-Container's "Property" Type.

```
\tpDeclareType{Properties}{%
90
91
          #4%
92
        }%
```

For each heading we declare some common macros like the ToC entry handlers, the heading's counters and its hooks.

```
93
         \tpDeclareType{Init}{%
          \tp@init@hooks{#3}%
94
          \let\@tp@cur@cont\tp@cur@cont
95
          \def\tp@cur@cont{heading}%
96
97
           \tp@init@l@{toc}{#2}{#3}%
98
          \let\tp@cur@cont\@tp@cur@cont
99
           \tp@init@cnt{#3}%
100
```

 $Unlike other \ Sub-Containers, headings \ form \ no \ own \ \underline{L}^{A}\underline{T}_{\underline{E}}\underline{X} \ environment. \ Instead, headings \ are \ specifications \ of \ one \ no \ own \ \underline{L}^{A}\underline{T}_{\underline{E}}\underline{X} \ environment.$ common heading environment. Is is outsourced into the internal \tp@declare@heading macro, which is defined below.

The reason for that is that we don't want to define versions of the same property macros for each and every single heading level. Instead, we locally re-define the general low-level macros that represent the heading's properties for each instance of the generalised heading container.

```
\tp@declare@heading{#2}{#3}%
101
       }%
102
103
     }%
104 }
```

\tp@heading@create@parent stores the heading level's name and its parent, if it exists.

```
105 \def\tp@heading@create@parent#1#2{%
```

\tp@declare@heading consists of two parts: In the first part, the inheritance mechanism and the initializers for each new heading level are triggered.

```
\def\tp@declare@heading#1#2{%

\tpEvalType{Parent}%

\tpEvalType{Init}%
```

\tpUseHeading is defined as second step. It is called at the end of each **heading** environment to process the Components within the Container instance. Each heading level has its own "version" of this macro.

```
\csgdef{tpUseHeading#2}{%
```

Since heading levels don't define their own environments, we make sure that heading is the namespace we are working in.

```
115 \tpNamespace{heading}%
116 \@setpar{\@0par}%
```

Properties are stored in macros specific to the current heading Sub-Container, therefore we evaluate the level's Properties, not those of the heading Container. However, since we made use of the inheritance mechanism earlier, each Sub-Container's Property list also contains the general heading Property list.

```
\def\tpHeadingLevel{#1}%
\tpEvalType[#2]{Properties}%
```

Processing the author name list (from coco-meta.sty).

```
119 \tp@meta@role@eval{Author}%
120 \tpComposeCollection{tpAuthor}{author-contact-block-format}{AuthorContactBlock}%
121 \tpComposeCollection{tpAffil}{affil-block-format}{AffilBlock}%
```

Processing the tpQuote environments, if any.

```
122 \tpComposeCollection{tpQuote}{quote-block-format}{QuoteBlock}%
```

Hyperref related stuff.

```
123 \def\Hy@toclevel{#1}%
```

Call the mechanism to calculate the heading's counter.

```
124 \tp@auto@number{#1}{#2}%
```

Here, the actual construction of the heading begins.

```
125 \tpUseProperty{heading-par}%
126 \tp@hd@use@hook{before-hook}{#2}%
127 \tpUseProperty{before-heading}%
```

Add vertical space before the heading

```
128 \tp@do@before@skip
```

The counters we calculated earlier and the space needed to render them are evaluated

```
\tp@format@number{}{}{#1}%
129
```

The value of after-skip is essential to determine whether the heading is to be displayed as block or inline element. In case, some heading definition omits setting a proper value, we build a fallback.

```
\tpIfProp{after-skip}{\expandafter\global\expandafter\@tempskipa\expandafter=\tpUseProperty{
130
           after-skip}\relax}{\global\@tempskipa=1sp\relax}%
       \tp@hd@use@hook{before-print-hook}{#2}%
131
       \def\@svsec{%
132
```

The heading block is the composition of all of the heading's Components that are to be printed where the heading environment is in the source.

```
\tpUseProperty{before-heading-block}%
133
```

Labels to be used with LaTeX's cross reference mechanism are defined

```
\tp@heading@create@labels{#2}% label facility
134
         \leftskip\tpUseProperty{margin-left}%
135
         \rightskip\tpUseProperty{margin-right}%
136
         \bgroup
137
           \tpUseProperty{heading-block}%
138
```

Generate entries for ToC, bookmarks and page headers. This has to be here because in rare cases, abstracts could cause the whole heading to spread over more than one page and that results in the ToC entry pointing to the last page.

Style progammers need to make sure that no page breaks are allowed within the heading-block!

```
\tpIfPropVal{no-toc}{true}{}{\tp@make@toc}% ToC entries
139
140
           \tpIfPropVal{no-BM}{true}{}{\tp@make@bookmarks}% Bookmarks
           \tpUseProperty{toc-hook}%
141
           \tpIfProp{extended}{\tpUseProperty{extended-heading}}{}%
142
         \egroup%
143
144
         \tp@make@run% Running headers
145
         \tpUseProperty{after-heading-block}%
146
       }%
```

Finally, we decide whether the printable material we stored in \@svsec is to be rendered as a block or inline. This is adopted from LATEX's \@startsection. The distinction is made by the sign of after-skip: a positive value yields a block heading, a negative value yields an inline heading.

```
\ifdim\@tempskipa <\z@\relax
147
         \tp@inline@heading
148
149
       \else
         \tp@block@heading
150
151
       \fi
```

This macro is called at the end of the heading environment. In order to deal with possible vertical spaces after the heading, we wait until the group of the heading environemnt is closed before we actually print the fully composed heading. The definition of \next happens in either \tp@inline@heading or \tp@block@heading.

```
\aftergroup\next%
152
153
     }%
154 }
```

\tp@hd@use@hook recursively includes a hook #1 from the heading #2's parent before expanding its own version.

```
\def\tp@hd@use@hook#1#2{%
155
     \expandafter\ifx\csname tp@parent@#2\endcsname\relax\else
156
157
       \edef\@@parent{#1-\csname tp@parent@#2\endcsname}%
158
       \expandafter\tpUseHook\expandafter{\@@parent}%
     \fi
159
     \tpUseHook{#1-\tp@heading@name}%
160
161 }
```

\tp@do@before@skip is a routine that determins the skip that is inserted before a heading.

```
\def\tp@do@before@skip{%
162
     \setlength\@tempskipa{\tpUseProperty{before-skip}}%
163
164
     \ifdim\@tempskipa<\z@\relax
165
       \def\do@skip{\minusvspace{-\@tempskipa}}%
166
     \else
       \def\do@skip{\addvspace{\@tempskipa}}%
167
     \fi%
168
     \if@nobreak
169
       \everypar{}%
170
171
       \do@skip
172
       \addpenalty\@secpenalty
173
       \do@skip
174
175
     \{fi\}
```

Initializers for New Heading Levels

\tp@init@hooks initializes the Hooks for heading level #1.

```
176 \def\tp@init@hooks#1{%
     \tpDeclareHook{toc-before-hook-#1}% Expanded before the toc entry is printed
177
     \tpDeclareHook{toc-after-hook-#1}% Expanded after the toc entry is printed
178
     \tpDeclareHook{before-hook-#1}% Expanded before before-heading property is expanded
179
     \tpDeclareHook{before-print-hook-#1}% Expanded at the very beginning of the local definition of \
180
181 }
```

\tp@init@cnt initialises a counter with the name #1 for automatic numbering if it doesn't exist, yet.

```
\def\tp@init@cnt#1{\ifcsname c@#1\endcsname\else\@definecounter{#1}\fi}
```

Initializers for Instances of Heading Levels

\tp@auto@number advances the heading counter if the numbering Property is set to auto and the current heading is not overridden by the Number Component. #1 is the numeric level of the heading, #2 is the name of the heading's counter.

```
\def\tp@auto@number#1#2{%
183
184
     \tpIfPropVal{numbering}{auto}
       {\expandafter\ifx\csname c@#2\endcsname\relax\tp@init@cnt{#2}\fi
185
186
        \tpIfAttrIsset{heading}{nonumber}
187
          {}
188
          {\tpIfComp{Number}
189
            {}
```

```
190
191
                                                                                                                                                                                                              \stepcounter{#2}%
  192
                                                                                                                                                                                                            \ensuremath{\mbox{\mbox{$\sim$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{\mbox{$\sim$}}}\ensuremath{\mbox{\mbox{$\sim$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$\sim$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$\sim$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$\sim$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$\sim$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$\sim$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$\sim$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$\sim$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$\sim$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$\sim$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$\sim$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$\sim$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$\sim$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$\sim$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$\sim$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$\sim$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$\sim$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$\sim$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$\sim$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$\sim$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$\sim$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$\sim$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$\sim$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$\sim$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$\sim$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$\sim$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$\sim$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$\sim$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$\sim$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$\sim$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$\sim$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$\sim$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$\sim$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$\sim$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$\sim$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$\sim$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$\sim$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$\sim$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$\sim$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$\sim$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$\sim$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$\sim$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$\sim$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$\sim$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$\sim$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$\sim$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$\sim$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$\sim$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$\sim$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$\sim$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$\sim$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$\sim$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$\sim$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$\sim$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$\sim$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$\sim$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$\sim$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$\sim$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$\sim$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$\sim$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$\sim$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$\sim$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$\sim$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$\sim$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$\sim$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$\sim$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$\sim$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$\sim$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$\sim$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$\sim$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$\sim$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$\sim$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$\sim$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$\sim$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$\sim$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$\sim$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$\sim$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$\sim$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$\sim$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$\sim$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$\sim$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$\sim$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$\sim$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$\sim$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$\sim$}}\ensuremath{\mbox{$\sim$}}\
193
                                                                                                                                                                                                            \expandafter\tpNumber\expandafter{\@tempa}%
194
                                                                                                                                                                                    \fi}}
195
                                                                                                                }{}}
```

Label mechanism 1.3

\@tp@heading@parse@label separates multiple comma-separated values within the same label attribute.

```
196 \def\@tp@heading@parse@label#1,#2,\@nil{%
     \@tp@heading@create@labels{#1}%
197
     \if!#2!\else
198
       \@tp@heading@parse@label#2,\@nil
199
200
     \mathbf{fi}
```

\tp@heading@create@labels is the wrapper to handle multiple values in the label Attribute.

```
\def\tp@heading@create@labels#1{%
201
     \ifx\Hy@MakeCurrentHrefAuto\@undefined\else
202
       \Hy@MakeCurrentHrefAuto{tp.#1}%
203
       \Hy@raisedlink{\hyper@anchorstart{\@currentHref}\hyper@anchorend}%
204
205
     \fi
     \tpIfAttr{heading}{label}
206
       {\expandafter\@tp@heading@parse@label\tp@heading@attr@label,,\@nil}{}}
207
```

\@tp@heading@create@labels generates the labels to be used with LATEX's cross reference and hyperref's hyperlink mechanisms, simultanuously. This macro locally redefines LaTeX's \label macro and sets both \ @currentlabel as well as a \hyperlink target.

```
208
   \def\@tp@heading@create@labels#1{%
209
     \if!#1!\else
       \tpIfComp{Number}
210
         {\edef\@tempa{\expandonce{\tp@heading@Number}}%
211
         \let\@currentlabel\@tempa\relax
212
         \let\@currentlabelname\tp@heading@Title}
213
```

in case, un-numbered headings receive a label to be accessed via \pageref or something:

```
{\phantomsection}%
214
       \expandafter\hypertarget\expandafter{#1}{}%
215
       \expandafter\tpltx@label\expandafter{#1}%
216
217
218
     \global\let\label\tpltx@label}
```

Externalisation of Heading Compoents

Components of headings may be used far away from the heading itself. Since, by design, Components are defined strictly local within their containers, those externale usages demand special treatment.

2.1 Common Stuff

\tp@check@author checks if the AuthorNameList override Component is given in the input for any given output override prefixed by #1. If not, it is built if there are any Author subcontainers, at all.

```
219 \def\tp@check@author#1{%
     \tpIfComp{#1AuthorNameList}{}{%
220
       \tpIfComp{AuthorNameList}{%
221
222
         \expandafter\csname tp#1AuthorNameList\expandafter\endcsname\expandafter{\
             tp@heading@AuthorNameList}%
       }{\ifnum\tpAuthorCnt>\z@
223
           \tpCompDef\tp@tempa{tpAuthor}{author-list-format}%
224
225
          \ifx\tp@tempa\relax
226
           \else
227
            \expandafter\csname tp#1AuthorNameList\expandafter\endcsname\expandafter{\tp@tempa}%
           \fi
228
         \fi
229
       }}}%
230
```

Table of Contents Entry

\tp@make@toc initializes the creation of a heading instance's entry in the table of contents.

Each entry is in itself treated as a Container. As such, it consists of Components that are written into the .toc file.

```
231 \def\tp@make@toc{%
              \tp@check@empty{heading}{Title}{Toc}%
232
               \tp@check@empty{heading}{Number}{Toc}%
233
               \tp@check@empty{heading}{Subtitle}{Toc}%
234
               \tp@check@author{Toc}%
235
               \tpIfAttrIsset{heading}{notoc}
236
237
                     {}
                     {\protected@edef\tp@heading@toc@entry{%
238
                            \label{thm:comp} $$ \operatorname{TocTitle}_{\boldsymbol{\string\ignorespaces\space}\expandonce} $$ \end{TocTitle} $$ \operatorname{TocTitle}_{\boldsymbol{\string\ignorespaces}\space} $$ \end{TocTitle} $$$ \end{TocTitle} $$ \end{TocTitle} $$ \end{TocTitle} $$ \end{TocTitle} $$$ \e
239
                                          tp@heading@TocTitle}}}{}%
240
                            \tpIfComp{TocNumber}{\string\tpTocNumber{\string\ignorespaces\space\expandonce{\
                                         tp@heading@TocNumber}}}}}%
                            \tpIfComp{TocAuthorNameList}{\string\tpTocAuthorNameList{\string\ignorespace\space\
241
                                         expandonce{\tp@heading@TocAuthorNameList}}}{}%
                            \tpIfComp{TocSubtitle}{\string\tpTocSubtitle{\string\ignorespaces\space\expandonce{\
242
                                         tp@heading@TocSubtitle}}}{}
243
                       \tpIfProp{toc-level}{\edef\tp@heading@name{\tpUseProperty{toc-level}}}{}%
244
                        \protected@write\@auxout
245
                            {\tpGobble}%
246
                            {\string\@writefile{toc}{\protect\tpContentsline{\tp@heading@name}{\tp@heading@toc@entry
247
                                         }{\thepage}{\@currentHref}\protected@file@percent}}\relax
248
                    }
249 }
```

\tp@toc@extract@data is called within the \l@<\level> macro to extract the Components for each entry in the .toc file. #1 is the numerical heading level, #2 is the name of the heading level, #3 is the content of the toc entry (which holds the Components), #4 is the page number.

```
250 \def\tp@toc@extract@data#1#2#3#4{%
251
    \tpNamespace{heading}%
252
     \tpEvalType[#2]{Properties}%
253
     \tpDeclareComp{TocPage}{}{}%
   \tpTocPage{\tpUseProperty{toc-page-face}#4}%
254
```

```
\tpDeclareComp{TocTitle}{}{}{
255
256
     \tpDeclareComp{TocSubtitle}{}{}%
257
     \tpDeclareComp{TocNumber}{}{}%
258
     \tpDeclareComp{TocAuthorNameList}{}{}}
259
     \tp@expand@l@contents{#3}{heading}{Toc}{Title}%%
260
     \tp@format@number{toc-}{Toc}{#1}%
261 }
```

\tp@toc@print@entry is also called within the \l@<level> macro and eventually prints the entry by expanding a heading's toc-specific Properties.

```
\def\tp@toc@print@entry#1{%
262
     \bgroup
263
       \tpUseHook{toc-before-hook-#1}%
264
265
       \tpUseProperty{toc-before-entry}%
       \tpUseProperty{toc-format}%
266
       \tpUseHook{toc-after-hook-#1}%
267
       \tpUseProperty{toc-after-entry}%
268
     \egroup}
269
```

Facility to create the running title macros

\tp@make@run prepares the Components used to compose the running titles. It checks if the user provides page header specific overrides in the heading instance. If not, it uses the non-specific Components instead, as long as they are not empty.

After all the header-specific Components are set, the heading level specific property running-heading is evaluated and passed to the corresponding \<level>mark macros iff they exist.

```
270 \def\tp@make@run{%
     \tp@check@empty{heading}{Title}{Run}%
271
     \tp@check@empty{heading}{Number}{Run}%
272
     \tp@check@author{Run}%
273
274
     \tp@check@empty{heading}{Subtitle}{Run}%
275
     \tpUseProperty{running-extra}%
     \tpIfProp{running-level}
276
       {\letcs\tp@mark@name{\tpUseProperty{running-level}mark}}
277
278
       {\letcs\tp@mark@name{\tp@heading@name mark}}%
279
       \letcs\tp@heading@parent{tp@parent@\tp@heading@name}%
280
       \ifx\tp@mark@name\@undefined
        \ifx\tp@heading@parent\relax\else
281
282
           \letcs\tp@mark@name{\tp@heading@parent mark}%
         \fi
283
       \fi
284
285
     \ifx\tp@mark@name\@undefined\else
286
       \begingroup
287
        \tpGobble
        \protected@edef\@tempa{\csname tp@heading@running-heading\endcsname}%
288
        \expandafter\tp@mark@name\expandafter{\@tempa}%
289
       \endgroup
290
291
     \fi
292 }
```

Facility to create PDF bookmarks

\tp@make@bookmarks generates an entry that is directly written as Bookmark into the PDF file. This is done using the bookmark package.

```
293 \def\tp@make@bookmarks{%
     \tp@check@empty[Toc]{heading}{Title}{BM}%
294
     \tp@check@empty[Toc]{heading}{Number}{BM}%
295
     \tp@check@empty[Toc]{heading}{AuthorNameList}{BM}%
296
297
     \tp@check@empty[Toc]{heading}{Subtitle}{BM}%
298
     \tpIfAttrIsset{heading}{noBM}
299
       {\tpIfProp{bookmark-level}{\edef\Hy@toclevel{\tpUseProperty{bookmark-level}}}{}}
300
        \begingroup
301
302
         \tpGobble
         \protected@edef\@tempa{\csname tp@heading@bookmark\endcsname}%
303
         \bookmark[level=\Hy@toclevel,dest=\@currentHref]{\expandonce{\@tempa}}%
304
305
        \endgroup
      }}
306
```

Rendering the Headings

Inline Headings 3.1

\tp@inline@heading Inline headings are stored in a temporary box and expanded after the next (non-heading) paragraph is opened.

```
307 \newbox\tp@inlinesecbox
   \def\tp@inline@heading{%
     \tpIfProp{after-indent}{\global\@afterindenttrue}{\global\@afterindentfalse}%
309
310
     \tpIfProp{interline-para}
       {\global\setbox\tp@inlinesecbox\hbox{\ifvoid\tp@inlinesecbox\else\unhbox\tp@inlinesecbox\
311
           tpUseProperty{interline-para-sep}\fi\@svsec}}%
       {\global\setbox\tp@inlinesecbox\hbox{\@svsec}}
312
313
     \@nobreakfalse
314
     \global\@noskipsectrue
     \gdef\next{%
315
       \global\everypar{%
316
         \if@noskipsec
317
          \global\@noskipsecfalse
318
          {\setbox\z@\lastbox}%
319
          \clubpenalty\@M
320
          \begingroup \unhbox\tp@inlinesecbox \endgroup
321
322
          \unskip
          \hskip -\@tempskipa
323
         \else
324
           \clubpenalty \@clubpenalty
325
326
          \global\setbox\tp@inlinesecbox\box\voidb@x
327
           \everypar{}%
328
         \fi}%
       \ignorespaces}}
329
```

Block Headings

\tp@block@heading is used to print block headings.

```
\def\tp@block@heading{%
330
     \@svsec
331
332
     \tpUseProperty{after-heading-par}%
     \tpIfProp{after-indent}{\global\@afterindenttrue}{\global\@afterindentfalse}%
333
334
     \gdef\next{%
       \ifdim\parskip>\z@\relax\advance\@tempskipa-\parskip\relax\fi
335
       \vskip \@tempskipa
336
       \@afterheading
337
       \ignorespaces}}
338
```

The heading environment

Environment Macros

\heading is the macro called at the begin of the heading environment. Optional #1 stores the headings local parameters, #2 is the level of the heading.

```
339 \def\heading{\@ifnextchar [{\@heading}{\@heading[]}}%]
340 \def\@heading[#1]#2{%
```

Some IATEX kernel macros are saved, the namespace is set and counted groups from previous headings are reset.

```
\tp@heading@reserve
```

Handling of the optional argument

```
\tpParseAttributes{heading}{#1}%
```

The mandatory argument contains the heading level. This corresponds to LATEX's way of counting heading levels, where, by default, part is -1, chapter is 0, section is 1, etc.

```
\edef\tp@heading@name{#2}%
```

The cascaded Properties of the heading level are expanded. This is excluded into its own macro to simplify re-definition if necessary.

```
\tpEvalType[#2]{Components}%
345 }
```

\endheading is stuff that happens at the end of the heading environment.

```
\def\endheading{%
346
     \expandafter\ifx\csname tpUseHeading\tp@heading@name\endcsname\relax
347
       \PackageError{coco-headings.sty}{Heading level \tp@heading@name\space unknown!}{A Heading
348
           with level \tp@heading@name\space is unknown. Use the \string\tpDeclareHeading\space
           macro to declare heading levels.}%
     \else
349
      \csname tpUseHeading\tp@heading@name\endcsname%
350
     \fi
351
     \tp@heading@reset
352
353 }
```

4.2 Content Handlers

\tp@heading@reserve re-directs some of L*TEX's kernel macros and makes sure that some other macros have their default values:

```
354 \def\tp@heading@reserve{%
     \tpNamespace{heading}%
355
     \let\tpltx@dbl@backslash\\
356
357
     \let\\\tpBreak
     \let\tpltx@label\label
358
     \let\tp@heading@label\relax
359
     \def\tpAuthorCnt{\z@}%
360
361
     \def\tpAffilCnt{\z@}%
362
     \tp@reset@components{\tp@cur@cont}%
363
```

r estores LATEX's default definitions (however, this should be unnecessary since heading is an environment and therefore constitutes a closed group).

```
def\tp@heading@reset{%

let\tp@cur@cont\relax

let\\tpltx@dbl@backslash

let\label\tpltx@label

let\tp@heading@name\relax

let\tp@heading@label\relax

}
```

\tp@heading@quotes covers multiple quotation blocks assocciated with a heading.

\tp@heading@role@handlers sets up the additional Components for the Author Role specific to headings.

```
378 \def\tp@heading@authors{%
379
     \tpAddToRole{Author}{%
       \tpDeclareCountedComp{AuthorContact}%
380
381
     \tpDeclareRoleBlock{Author}{ContactBlock}{author-contact-block-format}%
382
     \tpGroupHandler{tpAuthor}{%
383
       \tpIfComp{AuthorContact}{}{\csname tpAuthorContact\endcsname{\tpUseProperty{author-contact-
384
           format}}{}{}%
385
386
     \tp@provide@hd@overrides{AuthorNameList}%
387 }
```

\tp@provide@hd@macros is a wrapper that creates the user-level macros for the Component itself and its overrides. #1 is the Component name.

```
388 \def\tp@provide@hd@macros#1{%
389 \tpDeclareComp{#1}{}{}%
390 \tp@provide@hd@overrides{#1}%
391 }
```

\tp@provide@hd@overrides declares the Component macros for a heading Component's overrides. #1 is the Component name. The overrides allow a four-way distinction between i the data printed in-situ (\taup#1), ii data sent to toc (\tpToc#1), (iii) data sent to the page styles (\tpRun#1), and (iv) the data sent to the PDF bookmarks (\tpBM#1).

```
392 \def\tp@provide@hd@overrides#1{%
     \tpDeclareComp{Toc#1}{}{} toc overrides
393
     \tpDeclareComp{Run#1}{}{}% running overrides
394
     \tpDeclareComp{BM#1}{}{}% bookmark overrides
395
396 }
```

Defaults 5

```
\tpAddToDefault{heading}{%
397
     \tpSetProperty{interline-para}{}%
398
     \tpSetProperty{interline-para-sep}{\space}
399
     \tpSetProperty{heading-par}{%
400
       \tpIfProp{interline-para}{\if@noskipsec \leavevmode \fi}{}%
401
402
       \par
403
       \global\@afterindenttrue
404
     \tpSetProperty{after-heading-par}{\par \nobreak}% par commands at the end of non-inline headings
405
     \tpSetProperty{before-heading}{}%
406
     \tpSetProperty{title-face}{\bfseries}%
407
     \tpSetProperty{subtitle-face}{\normalfont}%
408
409
     \tpSetProperty{author-face}{\normalfont}%
     \tpSetProperty{quote-face}{\raggedleft}%
410
411
     \tpSetProperty{quote-source-face}{}%
412
     \tpSetProperty{quote-block-format}{%
       \bgroup
413
        \tpUseProperty{quote-face}%
414
415
        \tpUseComp{QuoteText}\par
416
        \tpIfComp{QuoteSource}{{\tpUseProperty{quote-source-face}--\space\tpUseComp{QuoteSource}}\
             par}{}%
417
       \egroup}
     \tpSetProperty{heading-block}
418
       {\tpUseProperty{title-face}%
419
       \tpIfComp{Number}
420
421
         {\tpUseProperty{hang-number}}
         {\leftskip0pt}%
422
423
        \tpUseComp{Title}\par%
        \tpIfComp{Subtitle}{{\tpUseProperty{subtitle-face}\tpUseComp{Subtitle}}\par}{}%
424
       \tpIfComp{AuthorNameList}{{\tpUseProperty{author-face}\tpUseComp{AuthorNameList}}\par}{}%
425
       \tpIfComp{QuoteBlock}{\tpUseComp{QuoteBlock}}{}%
426
       \tpIfComp{AffilBlock}{{\tpUseProperty{affil-block-face}\tpUseComp{AffilBlock}}\par}{}%
427
428
429
     \tpSetProperty{extended-heading}{%
430
       \tpIfComp{Abstract}
431
         {\par\vskip\baselineskip
432
         {\bfseries\tpIfComp{AbstractLabel}{\tpUseComp{AbstractLabel}}{Abstract}}\par
433
         {\itshape\small\tpUseComp{Abstract}}\par}
434
         {}%
435
       \tpIfComp{Keywords}
436
         {\par\vskip\baselineskip
         {\bfseries\tpIfComp{KeywordsLabel}}{KeywordsLabel}}{Keywords}}\par
437
438
         {\itshape\small\tpUseComp{Keywords}\par}}
439
        {}%
```

```
}%
440
441
     \tpSetProperty{before-skip}{\z@skip}% TODOC: values < Opt use \minusvspace, else \addvspace. LaTeX's
          default behaviour of @afterindent is relocated to the after-indent property.
442
     \tpSetProperty{after-heading-block}{}%
443
     \tpSetProperty{before-heading-block}{\parindent\z@ \parskip\z@}%
     \tpSetProperty{toc-hook}{}% Called, after ToC and BM entries have been written to the .aux file
444
     \tpSetProperty{after-indent}{}%
445
446
     \tpSetProperty{margin-left}{}%
447
     \tpSetProperty{margin-right}{\@flushglue}%
448
     \tpSetProperty{after-skip}{1sp}%
449
     \tpSetProperty{indent}{auto}%
450
     \tpSetProperty{number-width}{}%
451
     \tpSetProperty{number-sep}{\space}%
     \tpSetProperty{number-align}{left}%
452
453
     \tpSetProperty{number-format}{%
454
       \bgroup
         \tpUseProperty{title-face}%
455
456
         \tpUseProperty{number-face}%
457
         \tpUseComp{Number}%
458
         \tpUseProperty{number-sep}%
459
       \earoup}
460
     \tpSetProperty{numbering}{auto}%
     %% running header
461
     \tpSetProperty{running-level}{}% override level for running title, name
462
463
     \tpSetProperty{running-heading}{%
       \tpIfComp{RunAuthorNameList}{\tpUseComp{RunAuthorNameList}:\space}{}%
464
       \tpUseComp{RunTitle}%
465
     }%
466
467
     %% ToC
     \tpSetProperty{no-toc}{false}% toc entries are generally disabled iff true
468
469
     \tpSetProperty{no-BM}{false}% bookmark entries are generally disabled, iff true
470
     \tpSetProperty{toc-margin-top}{\z@}% left indent of the whole entry
471
     \tpSetProperty{toc-margin-bottom}{\z@}% bottom margin of the whole entry
     \tpSetProperty{toc-margin-left}{auto}% left indent of the whole entry
472
473
     \tpSetProperty{toc-margin-right}{\@pnumwidth}% right margin of the whole entry
474
     \tpSetProperty{toc-title-face}{}% appearance of title
     \tpSetProperty{toc-indent}{auto}% offset of the first line of the entry, auto: hang indent by max-
475
          number-width for the level
     \tpSetProperty{toc-number-width}{}% current width of the TocNumber
476
     \tpSetProperty{toc-number-align}{left}% alignment of TocNumber within the hbox when hanging
477
     \tpPropertyLet{toc-number-face}{toc-title-face}% appearance of the TocNumber
478
479
     \tpSetProperty{toc-number-sep}{\enskip}% thing between TocNumber and TocTitle
     \tpSetProperty{toc-number-format}{% Format of the TocNumber
480
481
       \bgroup
482
         \tpUseProperty{toc-number-face}%
483
         \tpUseComp{TocNumber}%
         \tpUseProperty{toc-number-sep}%
484
485
       \egroup}
     \tpSetProperty{toc-page-sep}{\dotfill}% between TocTitle and the page counter
486
     \tpSetProperty{toc-page-face}{}% appearance of the page value
487
488
     \tpSetProperty{toc-page-format}{% format of the page value
489
       \tpUseProperty{toc-page-sep}%
       \bgroup
490
         \tpUseProperty{toc-page-face}%
491
492
         \tpUseComp{TocPage}%
493
       \egroup}%
494
     \tpSetProperty{toc-link}{none}% should toc entries be linked? values: none,title,page,all
495
     \tpSetProperty{toc-level}{}% override heading level for ToC, name!
496
     \tpSetProperty{toc-before-entry}{% stuff before anything is output; used to setup margins, alignment,
          line-breaking rules, etc.
497
       \addvspace{\tpUseProperty{toc-margin-top}}%
```

```
\parindent \z@
498
499
       \let\\\@centercr
       \hyphenpenalty=\@M
500
501
       \rightskip \tpUseProperty{toc-margin-right} \@plus 1fil\relax
502
       \parfillskip -\rightskip
503
       \leftskip\tpUseProperty{toc-margin-left}%
504
     }%
505
     \tpSetProperty{toc-after-entry}{\par\addvspace{\tpUseProperty{toc-margin-bottom}}}% Thing at the
          end of the entry, after the page number
506
     \tpSetProperty{toc-format}{% Order and formatting of the entry itself
507
       \tpUseProperty{toc-title-face}%
508
       \tpIfComp{TocNumber}
         {\tpUseProperty{toc-hang-number}}
509
510
         {\leftskip0pt\leavevmode}%
511
       \tpIfComp{TocAuthorNameList}{\tpUseComp{TocAuthorNameList}:\space}{}%
512
       \tpUseComp{TocTitle}%
       \tpUseProperty{toc-page-format}%
513
514
     }%
     %% PDF-Bookmarks
515
516
     \tpSetProperty{bookmark-level}{}% override heading level for PDF bookmarks, numeric!
517
     \tpSetProperty{bookmark}{%
518
       \tpIfComp{BMNumber}{\tpUseComp{BMNumber}\space}{}%
       \tpUseComp{BMTitle}%
519
520
     \tpSetProperty{orcid-link}{% how the ORC-ID is rendered
521
       \tpIfComp{ORCID}{\def\tp@Linkimg{\includegraphics[height=1em]{logos/ORCID.pdf}}\tpCompLink{
522
           ORCID}{\tp@Linkimg}}{}%
523
     }%
     %% a single Author's contact infomration block
524
     \tpSetProperty{author-contact-format}{%Format of a single author's contact information
525
       \tpUseComp{FullName}\tpIfComp{Affil}{\textsuperscript{\tpUseComp{Affil}}}}}
526
       \tpUseProperty{orcid-link}%
527
528
      %
529
     }%
530
     \tpSetProperty{author-list-format}{% Format of the whole contact information block
       \tpUseComp{FullName}\ifnum\tpCurCount<\tpTotalCount\tpUseProperty{counted-name-sep}\fi
531
532
533
     \tpSetProperty{author-contact-block-format}{% Format of the whole contact information block
       \tpUseComp{AuthorContact}\ifnum\tpCurCount<\tpTotalCount\tpUseProperty{counted-name-sep}\fi
534
     }%
535
536 }
```

Miscellaneous 6

Alternative paragraph separation

\tpNewPar is a user-level macro to have a vertical skip between two local paragraphs and no indent in the second one. The amount of vertical space between the paragraphs can be adjusted with the optional argument. If #1 is omitted, \tpnewparskip is inserted, which defaults to 1\baselineskip if the dimension isn't set to something other than Opt in the preamble. This macro is intended to be used at the end of the first of the paragraphs.

```
537 \newdimen\tpnewparskip \AtBeginDocument{\ifdim\tpnewparskip=\z@\relax \tpnewparskip=1\
       baselineskip\relax\fi}
   \def\tpNewPar{\@ifnextchar[{\@tpnewpar}{\@tpnewpar[\the\tpnewparskip]}}%]
   \def\@tpnewpar[#1]{%
539
540 \ifhmode\par\fi
```

```
541 \vskip#1\relax
542
     \@afterheading
543 }
```

WARNING!

The following section is deprecated and will be changed or deleted in future releases.

\TitleBreak

544 **\let**\TitleBreak\tpBreak

545 %</headings>

Modul 7

24 %<*endnotes>

coco-notes.dtx

This file contains the code for foot- and endnote handling. It provides a switch between endnotes and footnotes as well as options to handle the resetting of footnote/endnote counters.

```
26 %% module for CoCoTeX that handles footnote/endnote switching.
27 %%
28 %% Maintainer: p.schulz@le-tex.de
29 %%
30 %% lualatex - texlive > 2019
31
  %%
32 \NeedsTeXFormat{LaTeX2e}[2018/12/01]
33 \ProvidesPackage{coco-notes}
      [2024/01/29 0.4.0 le-tex coco notes module]
```

internal switch for endnotes (\endnotestrue) or footnotes (\endnotesfalse, default).

```
35 \newif\ifendnotes \endnotesfalse
  \newif\ifendnotelinks \endnotelinksfalse
```

package options:

- endnotes activates endnotes.
- ennotoc prevents chapter headings in the Notes section from creating toc entries.
- resetnotesperchapter resets foot- and endnotes at the start of each chapter level heading. If omitted (default) foot- or endnotes are numbered throughout the whole document
- endnotesperchapter implies endnotes and allows the output of all collected endnotes at the end of each chapter. It also sets the note's heading to section level (otherwise it is chapter level).

```
37 \DeclareOption{endnotes}{\global\endnotestrue}
38 \DeclareOption{ennotoc}{\global\let\tp@ennotoc\relax}
39 \DeclareOption{resetnotesperchapter}{\global\let\reset@notes@per@chapter\relax}
41 \DeclareOption{endnotelinks}{\global\endnotelinkstrue}
42 \ProcessOptions
```

footnote package is mandatory since it provides the \savenotes and \spewnotes macros:

```
43 \RequirePackage{footnote}
```

Handling of endnotes:

```
44 \newif\if@enotesopen
45 \AtBeginDocument{\edef\tpfn@parindent{\the\parindent}}
46 \ifendnotes
47
    \RequirePackage{endnotes}
   \@ifpackageloaded{coco-headings}{\let\tp@useTeXHeading\relax}{}
```

```
% Allow linking endnotes to their respective occurrence in the document.
49
50
     \ifendnotelinks
51
       \global\newcount\endnoteLinkCnt \global\endnoteLinkCnt\z@
52
       \def\@endnotemark{%
53
         \leavevmode
54
         \ifhmode\edef\@x@sf{\the\spacefactor}\nobreak\fi
55
         \phantomsection%
56
         \label{endnote-\the\endnoteLinkCnt}%
57
         \hyperref[endnotetext-\the\endnoteLinkCnt]{\makeenmark}%
58
         \ifhmode\spacefactor\@x@sf\fi%
         \relax%
59
60
      }
     \fi
61
     62
     \def\enotesize{\normalsize}%
63
64
     \def\enoteformat{%
65
      % Create the label right at the start of the endnote text to prevent erroneous pointing to the next page
66
       \ifendnotelinks%
67
         \phantomsection%
         \label{endnotetext-\currentEndnote}%
68
       \fi
69
70
       \noindent
       \leavevmode
71
       \hskip-2em\hb@xt@2em{%
72
         \ifendnotelinks
73
          \hyperref[endnote-\currentEndnote]{\@theenmark}\\hss%
74
75
         \else
76
          \@theenmark\hss%
77
         \fi%
78
79
       \expandafter\parindent\tpfn@parindent\relax\expandafter%
80
     \gdef\enoteheading{%
81
       \leftskip2em
82
83
     \def\printnotes{%
84
       \ifx\endnotes@with@chapters\relax
85
         \ifnum\c@endnote>\z@
86
          \expandafter\global\expandafter\let\csname enotes@in@\the\realchap\endcsname\@empty
87
         \fi
88
89
       \fi
90
       \if@enotesopen
91
         \global\c@endnote\z@%
92
         \bgroup
93
         %\parindent\z@
94
         \parskip\z@
95
         \theendnotes
         \egroup
 96
       \{fi\}
97
98 \else
     \newcount\c@endnote \c@endnote\z@
99
     \let\printnotes\relax
100
101 \fi
102 \newcount\realchap \realchap\z@
   \ifx\endnotes@with@chapters\relax
103
104
     \AtBeginDocument{%
105
       \tpAddToHook[heading]{before-hook-chapter}{%
         \int \int c@endnote > \z@relax
106
          \expandafter\global\expandafter\let\csname enotes@in@\the\realchap\endcsname\@empty
107
         \fi
108
```

```
\global\advance\realchap\@ne
109
110
         \global\c@endnote\z@
111
         \def\tp@par@title{\tpIfComp{TocTitle}{\tpUseComp{TocTitle}}}\tpUseComp{Title}}}%
112
         \def\tp@par@runtitle{\tpIfComp{RunTitle}{\tpUseComp{RunTitle}}\\tpUseComp{Title}}}%
113
         \addtoendnotes{%
           \noexpand\expandafter\noexpand\ifx\noexpand\csname enotes@in@\the\realchap\noexpand\
114
               endcsname\noexpand\@empty
115
            \bgroup
              \noexpand\leftskip\noexpand\z@
116
117
              \noexpand\begin{heading}\ifx\tp@ennotoc\relax[notoc]\fi{section}%
118
                \noexpand\tpTitle{\tp@par@title}%
119
                \noexpand\tpRunTitle{\tp@par@runtitle}%
              \noexpand\end{heading}%
120
121
            \egroup
122
           \noexpand\fi}%
123
       }%
124
     }
125
   \fi
   \ifx\reset@notes@per@chapter\relax
126
127
     \AtBeginDocument{%
128
       \tpAddToHook[heading]{before-hook-chapter}{%
129
         \global\c@footnote\z@
         \global\c@endnote\z@
130
131
       }%
     }%
132
   \fi
133
```

Here we make a small adjustment to the \fn@fntext macro from the footnote package by making it \long and therefore allowing \par inside it's argument.

```
\long\def\fn@fntext#1{%
134
135
     \ifx\ifmeasuring@\@@undefined%
136
       \expandafter\@secondoftwo\else\expandafter\@iden%
137
138
     {\ifmeasuring@\expandafter\@gobble\else\expandafter\@iden\fi}%
139
     {%
140
       \global\setbox\fn@notes\vbox{%
141
         \unvbox\fn@notes%
142
         \fn@startnote%
143
         \@makefntext{%
           \rule\z@\footnotesep%
144
145
           \ignorespaces%
           #1%
146
           \@finalstrut\strutbox%
147
148
         }%
149
         \fn@endnote%
       }%
150
151
     }%
152 }
```

Re-definition of footnote package's footnote mark retriever to allow non-numeric values in the optional argument of \footnote.

```
153 \def\fn@getmark@i#1[#2]{%
      \sbox\z@{\@tempcnta0#2\relax}%
154
155
      \left| ifdim\right| vd \z@>0 \p@\relax
156
        \def\thempfn{#2}%
157
        \fn@getmark@iii%
158
159
        \csname c@\@mpfn\endcsname#2%
160
       \fn@getmark@ii%
```

```
\fi
161
162 }
163 \def\fn@getmark@iii#1{%
164
     \unrestored@protected@xdef\@thefnmark{\thempfn}%
165
     \endgroup%
166
     #1%
167 }
```

And the same for plain LATEX:

```
168 \def\@xfootnote[#1]{%
       \begingroup
169
         \sbox\z@{\ensuremath{\color{c}}\color{c}}\
170
         \left| \frac{v}{z} \right| = 0 \left| \frac{v}{z} \right|
171
           \unrestored@protected@xdef\@thefnmark{#1}%
172
         \else
173
            \csname c@\@mpfn\endcsname #1\relax
174
            \verb|\unrestored@protected@xdef|@thefnmark{\\ \textbf{thempfn}}| %
175
         \fi
176
177
       \endgroup
178
       \@footnotemark\@footnotetext%
179 }
```

Linking endnotes requires overwriting the endnotetext macro to save a global counter to the *.ent file.

```
180 \global\newif\if@haveenotes
   \label{longdef} \endnotetext#1{%}
181
182
     \global\@haveenotestrue
183
     \if@enotesopen \else \@openenotes \fi
     \immediate\write\@enotes{%
184
       \ifendnotelinks
185
         \string\def\string\currentEndnote{\the\endnoteLinkCnt}%
186
       \fi
187
       \@doanenote{\@theenmark}%
188
189
     }%
190
     \begingroup
        \def \operatorname{next} \{\#1\}\%
191
192
        \newlinechar='40
        \immediate\write\@enotes{\meaning\next}%
193
     \endgroup
194
     \immediate\write\@enotes{\@endanenote}%
195
196
     \ifendnotelinks
       \global\advance\endnoteLinkCnt\@ne%
197
     \fi%
198
199 }
```

```
200 %</endnotes>
```

Modul 8

coco-script.dtx

This package is used to handle non-latin based script systems like Japanese, Chinese, Armenian and the like.

The argument of the usescript option is a list of script systems that are used in the document. It is used to determine the additional fonts that are to be loaded via the babel package.

```
34 \let\usescript\relax
35 \define@key{coco-script.sty}{usescript}{\def\usescript{#1}}
36 \ProcessOptionsX
37 \RequirePackage[quiet]{fontspec}
38 \RequirePackage[bidi=basic,silent]{babel}
39 \def\parse@script#1,#2,\relax{%
40 \tp@script@callback{#1}%
41 \edef\@argii{#2}%
42 \let\next\relax
43
   \ifx\@argii\@empty\else
44
      \def\next{\parse@script#2,\relax}%
    \fi\next}
46 \ifx\usescript\relax\else
    \def\tp@script@callback#1{\expandafter\global\expandafter\let\csname use@script@#1\endcsname\
47
    \expandafter\parse@script\usescript,,\relax
48
49 \fi
  \message{^^J [coco-script Fonts loaded: \meaning\usescript]^^J}
```

1 Default fallback font

The default fall backfont is the NotoSans Font Family

```
\newfontfamily\fallbackfont{NotoSerif-Regular.ttf}%
[BoldFont = NotoSerif-Bold.ttf,%

ItalicFont = NotoSerif-Italic.ttf,%

BoldItalicFont = NotoSerif-BoldItalic.ttf,%

Path = ./fonts/Noto/Serif/,%

WordSpace = 1.25]
```

```
57 \newfontfamily\sffallbackfont{NotoSans-Regular.ttf}%
58 [BoldFont = NotoSans-Bold.ttf,%
59 ItalicFont = NotoSans-Italic.ttf,%
BoldItalicFont = NotoSans-BoldItalic.ttf,%
Path = ./fonts/Noto/Sans/,%
62 WordSpace = 1.25]
63 \DeclareTextFontCommand\textfallback{\fallbackfont}
64 \DeclareTextFontCommand\textsffallback{\sffallbackfont}
```

Generic Fonts Declaration Mechanism 2

```
#1
     Options passed to \babelprovide
#2
     language
#3
     argument(s) passed to \babelfont{rm}
#4
     argument(s) passed to \babelfont{sf}
```

```
65 | \def\tpDeclareBabelFont{\@ifnextchar[\tp@declare@babel@font{\tp@declare@babel@font[]}}%]
  \def\tp@declare@babel@font[#1]#2#3#4{%
66
    \expandafter\ifx\csname use@script@#2\endcsname\@empty
67
68
      \babelprovide[#1]{#2}%
      \message{^^J [coco-script Loaded Script: #2]^^J}%
69
70
      \expandafter\gdef\csname tp@babel@rm@font@#2\endcsname{#3}%
71
      \expandafter\gdef\csname tp@babel@sf@font@#2\endcsname{#4}%
72
      if!#2!else
73
        \def\tp@tempa{\babelfont[#2]{rm}}%
74
75
        \expandafter\expandafter\expandafter\tp@tempa\csname tp@babel@rm@font@#2\endcsname
76
      \fi
77
      \mathbf{if}!#3!\else
        \def\tp@tempa{\babelfont[#2]{sf}}%
78
79
        \expandafter\expandafter\expandafter\tp@tempa\csname tp@babel@sf@font@#2\endcsname
80
      \fi
    \fi
81
82 }
```

Top level macro to declare a font alias.

- #1 font family alias
- font family fallback

```
83 \def\tpBabelAlias#1#2{%
    \ifx\usescript\relax\else
84
      \def\tp@script@callback##1{%
85
       \expandafter\ifx\csname tp@no@fallback@##1\endcsname\relax
86
87
         \expandafter\ifx\csname tp@babel@#2@font@##1\endcsname\relax
88
           \PackageError
89
             {coco-script.sty}
90
             {\expandafter\string\csname #2family\endcsname\space for Language '##1' was not
                 declared!}
91
             {You attempted to declare an alias towards a font family that has not been declared
                 for the language '##1', yet.}%
92
93
           \def \tp@tempa{\babelfont[##1]{#1}}%
           \expandafter\expandafter\tp@tempa\csname tp@babel@#2@font@##1\endcsname
94
         \fi
95
        \else
96
```

```
\PackageInfo{coco-script.sty}{^^J\space\space\space No fallback for '##1';^^J\space
97
              \space\space\space Skipping font family '#1'->'#2'}%
98
        \fi}%
99
      \expandafter\parse@script\usescript,,\relax
100
    \fi}
```

Predefined script systems

Support for Armenian script

```
\ifx\use@script@armenian\@empty
101
     \message{^^J [coco-script Loaded Script: Armenian]^^J}
102
103
     \def\NotoArmenianPath{./fonts/Noto/Armenian/}
104
     \newfontfamily\fallbackfont@armenian{NotoSansArmenian-Regular.ttf}%
105
       [BoldFont = NotoSansArmenian-Bold.ttf,%
       Path = \NotoArmenianPath,%
106
       WordSpace = 1.25]
107
     \DeclareTextFontCommand\armenian{\fallbackfont@armenian}
108
109
     \let\tp@no@fallback@armenian\@empty%
110 \fi
```

3.2 Support for Chinese script

```
\tpDeclareBabelFont{chinese}{[%
       Path=./fonts/Noto/Chinese/,
112
       BoldFont = NotoSerifSC-Bold.otf,%
113
       WordSpace = 1.25]{NotoSerifSC-Regular.otf}}
114
     { [%
115
      Path=./fonts/Noto/Chinese/,
116
117
      BoldFont = NotoSansSC-Bold.otf,%
118
       WordSpace = 1.25]{NotoSansSC-Regular.otf}%
119
```

Support for Japanese script

```
120 \tpDeclareBabelFont{japanese}{[%
121
       Path=./fonts/Noto/Japanese/,
       BoldFont = NotoSerifJP-Bold.otf,%
122
       WordSpace = 1.25]{NotoSerifJP-Regular.otf}
123
124
     }{[%
125
      Path=./fonts/Noto/Japanese/,
126
       BoldFont = NotoSansJP-Bold.otf,%
127
       WordSpace = 1.25]{NotoSansJP-Regular.otf}
128
     }
```

Support for Hebrew script

```
129 \tpDeclareBabelFont{hebrew}{[%
Scale=MatchUppercase,%
```

```
Path=./fonts/Noto/Hebrew/,%
131
132
       Ligatures=TeX,%
133
       BoldFont = NotoSerifHebrew-Bold.ttf]{NotoSerifHebrew-Regular.ttf}%
134
   }{[%
135
       Scale=MatchUppercase,%
       Path=./fonts/Noto/Hebrew/,%
136
137
       Ligatures=TeX,%
138
       BoldFont = NotoSansHebrew-Bold.ttf]{NotoSansHebrew-Regular.ttf}%
139 }
```

3.5 Support for Arabic script

```
\tpDeclareBabelFont{arabic}{[%
140
141
       BoldFont = NotoNaskhArabic-Bold.ttf,%
       Path = ./fonts/Noto/Arabic/%
142
       ]{NotoNaskhArabic-Regular.ttf}}
143
144
     { [%
145
       BoldFont = NotoSansArabic-Bold.ttf,%
146
       Path = ./fonts/Noto/Arabic/%
147
       ]{NotoSansArabic-Regular.ttf}%
148
```

Support for Greek script

```
149
   \tpDeclareBabelFont{greek}{[%
       BoldFont = NotoSerif-Bold.ttf,%
150
151
       ItalicFont = NotoSerif-Italic.ttf,%
       BoldItalicFont = NotoSerif-BoldItalic.ttf,%
152
153
      Path = ./fonts/Noto/Serif/,%
154
       WordSpace = 1.25
155
       ]{NotoSerif-Regular.ttf}}
156
     {[BoldFont = NotoSans-Bold.ttf,%
       ItalicFont = NotoSans-Italic.ttf,%
157
158
       BoldItalicFont = NotoSans-BoldItalic.ttf,%
159
      Path = ./fonts/Noto/Sans/,%
160
       WordSpace = 1.25%
161
       ]{NotoSans-Regular.ttf}%
     }
162
```

Support for Syrian script

Since Babel does not support the Syrian script natively, we create a babel-syriac.ini file and include it, if it is needed. If we don't, the kerning and ligatures of Syriac text will be off.

Please note that due to the restrictions of the listings-Package, some Unicode characters cannot be displayed correctly in the documentation of the following code. Therefore, Syriac letters appear as "x" in the following source code listing.

```
163 \expandafter\ifx\csname use@script@syriac\endcsname\@empty%
164 \RequirePackage{filecontents}
165 \begin{filecontents*}{babel-syriac.ini}
166 [identification]
167 charset = utf8
168 version = 0.1
```

```
169 date = 2019-08-25
170 name.local = xxxxxxxxxx
| name.english = Classical Syriac
172 name.babel = classicalsyriac
173 tag.bcp47 = syc
174 tag.opentype = SYR
175 script.name = Syriac
176 script.tag.bcp47 = Syrc
177 script.tag.opentype = syrc
178 level = 1
179 encodings =
180 derivate = no
181 [captions]
182 [date.gregorian]
183 [date.islamic]
184 [time.gregorian]
185 [typography]
186 [characters]
187 [numbers]
188 [counters]
189 \end{filecontents*}
190 \fi
```

Now, we can create the fallback font and import the newly created ini file:

```
191 \tpDeclareBabelFont[import=syriac]{syriac}{[%
       BoldFont = NotoSansSyriac-Black.ttf,%
192
193
       ItalicFont = NotoSansSyriac-Regular.ttf,%
       BoldItalicFont = NotoSansSyriac-Black.ttf,%
194
      Path = ./fonts/Noto/Syriac/,%
195
       WordSpace = 1.25
196
197
       ]{NotoSansSyriac-Regular.ttf}}
     {[BoldFont = NotoSansSyriac-Black.ttf,%
198
199
       ItalicFont = NotoSansSyriac-Regular.ttf,%
200
       BoldItalicFont = NotoSansSyriac-Black.ttf,%
201
      Path = ./fonts/Noto/Syriac/,%
       WordSpace = 1.25%
202
       ]{NotoSansSyriac-Regular.ttf}%
203
204
```

Support for medieval scripts and special characters

only rm!

```
205 \babelfont{mdv}[%
206 Path=fonts/Junicode/,%
207 ItalicFont = Junicode-Italic.ttf,%
208 BoldFont = Junicode-Bold.ttf,%
209 BoldItalicFont = Junicode-BoldItalic.ttf,%
210 ]{Junicode.ttf}
211 \def\mdvfont#1{{\mdvfamily#1}}
```

```
212 %</script>
```

Modul 9

coco-title.dtx

This file provides macros and facilities for title pages.

1 Top-Level Interface

Container titlepage is the main Container for the document's locally defined meta data.

```
36 \tpDeclareContainer{titlepage}{%
37  \tpInherit {Components,Properties}{CommonMeta}%
38  \tpDeclareType{Components}{%
39  \tp@title@simple@comps
40  \tp@meta@generic@comp
```

The following macro provides some meta data Components defined in the coco-meta module. They are:

- Abstract and AbstractTitle,
- Keywords and KeywordsTitle,
- DOI and DOITitle, and
- TitleEn and TitleEnTitle, intended for foreign language publications where the title is translated into English.

```
41  \tp@title@fundings@comp
42  \tp@title@role@handlers{author}%
43  \tp@titlepage@role{editor}{Editor}%
44  \tp@titlepage@role{series-editor}{SeriesEditor}%
45  }%
46  \tpDeclareType{Properties}{}%
47  \tpDeclareEnv[tpMeta]{\tp@Meta}{\tp@endMeta}%
48 }
```

\tp@titlepage@role declares the roles for editors and series editors and initializes the biography meta block for both.

```
49 \def\tp@titlepage@role#1#2{%
    \tpDeclareRole[#1]{#2}%
50
51
    \tp@title@role@handlers{#1}{#2}%
52 }
```

\tp@title@role@handlers adds title page specific Components and Handlers to the Author, Editor and Series-Editor Roles.

```
53 \def\tp@title@role@handlers#1#2{%
    \tpAddToRole{#2}{%
54
55
      \tpDeclareCountedComp{Bio}%
      \tpDeclareCountedComp{Biography}}%
56
57
    \tpGroupHandler{tp#2}{%
      \tpIfComp{Biography}{}{\tpIfComp{Bio}{\tpBiography{\tpUseProperty{#1-biography-format}}}{}}}
58
59
    \tpDeclareRoleBlock[apply]{#2}{BioBlock}{#1-bio-block-format}%
60
61 }
```

\tpDeclareTitlepage is the default titlepage declarator with the next token being added the titlepage's Property list.

```
\def\tpDeclareTitlepage{\tpAddToType{Properties}{titlepage}}
```

\tp@Meta is the code executed at the beginning of the tpMeta Container

```
63 \def\tp@Meta{%
    \tpEvalType{Components}%
64
65 }
```

\tpAddTitleRole is a user-level macro to add both a new Role with the name #2 and a controlling Property #1 to the titlepage container.

```
66 \def\tpAddTitleRole#1#2{%
  67
  \tpAddTitleEval{\tp@title@eds@eval{#2}}%
68
69 }
```

\tpAddTitleEval is a User-level macro to add additional Material titlepage evaluators (the next token).

```
70 \def\tpAddTitleEval{\csgappto{tp@title@add@eval}}
```

\tp@title@add@eval is a hook for additional titlepage evaluators

```
71 \def\tp@title@add@eval{}
```

\tp@endMeta is the code executed at the end of the tpMeta Container

```
72 \def\tp@endMeta{%
    \tpNamespace{titlepage}%
73
    \tpEvalType{Properties}%
74
75
    \tp@maketitle
76
    \tp@meta@role@eval{Author}%
77
    \tpApplyCollection{tpAffil}{affil-block-item-format}{AffilBlock}%
    \tp@title@eds@eval{Editor}%
78
79
    \tp@title@eds@eval{SeriesEditor}%
80 \tp@meta@generic@eval
```

```
\tp@title@fundings@eval
81
82
    \tp@title@add@eval
83
    \tp@if@preamble\tp@title@set@pdfmeta\relax
84
    \tpUseHook{document-meta-hook}%
85
    \let\tp@cur@cont\@empty
86 }
```

Procesing of PDF Meta Data

The next few macros handle the content that is written directly into the pdf as meta data.

\tp@title@set@pdfmeta is the wrapper for the whole meta data handling.

```
\def\tp@title@set@pdfmeta{%
```

\tp@write@pdf@meta is used to transfer the DocumentInfo meta date to the pdf writer.

First we check, whether coco-accessibility.sty is used. If so, we check if the User has provided an xmp file by reading the required meta data field given in ##2 from that xmp file. If the temporary storage \@tempa is empty, this means that either that coco-accessibility.sty isn't loaded, that the user has not provided an xmp file, or that the specific field was empty or missing.

In this case, we take the value given in \#\#3 and store it in \@tempa. If the storage is still empty (i.e. the field is also missing in the tpMeta environment), we do nothing.

If the user has provided the meta datum in the tpMeta environment, we pass it either to hyperref's hypersetup variable given in \#\#1 (when coco-accessibility.sty is not used), or we pass it to \setDocInfo from the ltpdfa package using the data field given in \#\#2. In this case, the ltpdfa automatically creates a \jobname.xmp with the given meta data will be generated for the next LATEX run.

```
88
                             \def\tp@write@pdf@meta##1##2##3{%
    89
                                       \@ifpackageloaded{coco-accessibility}
    90
    91
                                                   {\edef\@tempa{\expandonce{\directlua{tex.print(cocotex.ally.meta.##2)}}}}}}}}}
    92
                                        \ifx\@tempa\@empty
                                                 \protected\def\@tempa{##3}%
    93
                                                 \ifx\@tempa\@empty\else
    94
                                                           \@ifpackageloaded{coco-accessibility}
    95
                                                                       {\pdfstringdef\x{##3}\setDocInfo{##2}{\x}}
    96
                                                                       {\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\en
    97
                                                \fi
    98
    99
                                       \fi
                            }%
100
```

```
\tp@title@insert@xmp
101
     \tp@title@process@bkt
102
     \tp@title@process@bka
103
     \tp@title@process@bkc
104
105 }
```

Processing of the Document's Title

```
\def\tp@title@process@bkt{%
106
     \let\tpBreak\space
107
     \protected@xdef\@title{\tpUseComp{Title}}%
108
     \tp@write@pdf@meta{pdftitle}{Title}{\tpUseComp{Title}}%
109
110
     \protected@edef\tp@run@book@title{\tpUseProperty{run-book-title}}%
     \expandafter\gdef\expandafter\tpRunBookTitle\expandafter{\tp@run@book@title}%
111
112 }
```

Processing of the Document's Author

\tp@title@process@bka processes the document's main author or, if that doesn't exist, the main editor, or throws a warning if neither exist.

```
113 \def\tp@title@process@bka{%
114
     \@tempswatrue
     \begingroup
115
       \tpGobble
116
       \renewcommand\foreignlanguage[2]{{##2}}%
117
       \ifnum\tpAuthorCnt>\z@
118
119
         \@setpar{\@@par}%
120
         \tpCompGDef\tpRunBookName{tpAuthor}{author-list-pdfinfo-format}%
121
         \ifnum\tpEditorCnt>\z@
122
123
          \tpCompGDef\tpRunBookName{tpEditor}{editor-list-pdfinfo-format}%
124
          \tpPackageWarning{transcript-title}{Meta Data}{No author or editor given!}%
125
126
          \@tempswafalse
         \fi
127
       \fi
128
129
       \if@tempswa
         \expandafter\author\expandafter{\tpRunBookName}%
130
         \tp@write@pdf@meta{pdfauthor}{Author}{\tpRunBookName}%
131
       \fi
132
     \endgroup
133
134 }
```

2.3 Processing of the PDF's Creator, Producer, and Keywords Meta Data

\tp@title@process@bkc processes the metadata for the pdf creator

```
\def\tp@title@process@bkc{%
135
     \tp@write@pdf@meta{pdfcreator}{Creator}{\tpIfComp{PDFCreator}{\tpUseComp{PDFCreator}}}\
136
         tpUseComp{Publisher}\tpIfComp{PubPlace}{, \tpUseComp{PubPlace}}{}}}
     \tp@write@pdf@meta{pdfproducer}{Producer}{\tpUseComp{PDFProducer}}%
137
     \tp@write@pdf@meta{pdfkeywords}{Keywords}{\tpUseComp{Keywords}}%
138
139 }
```

2.4 Including the XMP Meta Data

\tp@title@insert@xmp inserts the contents of the XMP meta data file into the pdf, if it exists.

```
140 \def\tp@title@insert@xmp{%
141
    \edef\include@xmp{\noexpand\@include@xmp{\tpUseComp{XmpFile}.xmp}}
    \def\@include@xmp##1{\IfFileExists{##1}{\@@include@xmp{##1}}{}}
```

```
\def\@@include@xmp##1{%
143
144
       \begingroup
145
         \immediate\pdfobj stream attr {/Type /Metadata /Subtype /XML}
146
147
         \pdfcatalog{/Metadata \the\pdflastobj\space 0 R}
148
       \endgroup}%
     \include@xmp
149
150 }
```

Intermediate Level Interfaces 3

before-maketitle-hook Hook that is expanded right before the titlepage is printed.

```
151 \tpDeclareHook[titlepage]{before-maketitle-hook}
152 \tpDeclareHook[titlepage]{document-meta-hook}
```

\tp@maketitle collects the meta information and constructs the tpMaketitle macro

```
153 \def\tp@maketitle{%
     \ifarticle
154
       \gdef\tpMaketitle{%
155
156
         \let\tp@cnt@grp\@empty
157
         \tpUseHook[titlepage]{before-maketitle-hook}%
158
         \bgroup
           \tpNamespace{titlepage}%
159
           \tpEvalType{Properties}%
160
           \tpUseProperty{article-title}%
161
162
         \egroup
         \tpUseHook[titlepage]{after-maketitle-hook}%
163
164
       }%
     \else
165
       \gdef\tpMaketitle{%
166
         \let\tp@cnt@grp\@empty
167
         \tpUseHook[titlepage]{before-maketitle-hook}%
168
         \bgroup
169
170
           \tpNamespace{titlepage}%
171
           \tpEvalType{Properties}%
          \tpUseProperty{before-titlepage}%
172
173
           \tpIfComp{Cover}{%
            \tpUseProperty{coverpage}%
174
          }{}%
175
           \tpUseProperty{before-titlepage-roman}%
176
177
           \tpUseProperty{titlepage-roman}%
178
           \tpUseProperty{after-titlepage}%
         \egroup
179
180
         }%
     \fi
181
182 }
```

Funds, Grants, and Supporters

This is a Subcontainer within tpMeta which allows to set up multiple funding, grant, or supporter callouts.

\tp@title@fundings@comp wrapper to set up the Subcontainer

```
| def\tp@title@fundings@comp{% | \tpDeclareComp{FundingBlock}{\expandafter\global}{}% | \tpDeclareComponentGroup{tpFunding}{% | \tpDeclareCountedComp{FundName}% | \tpDeclareCountedComp{FundLogo}% | \tpDeclareCountedComp{FundID}% | \tpDeclareCountedComp{FundID}% | \tpDeclareCountedComp{FundID}% | \text{ppeclareCountedComp}{FundID}% | \text{ppeclareCountedComp}{FundID
```

\tp@title@fundings@eval Evaluator for the funding

```
191 \def\tp@title@fundings@eval{{%
192 \def\tp@cur@cont{titlepage}%
193 \tpComposeCollection{tpFunding}{fund-format}{FundingBlock}%
194 }}
```

\tp@title@eds@eval evaluator for the editors

\tp@create@editor@string evaluates the editor string and adds a suffix.

3.2 Simple Component Declarations

\tp@title@macro is an alias for \tpDeclareGComp for backwards compatibility.

```
| \leftar \tp@title@macro\tpDeclareGComp
```

\tp@title@simple@comps wrapper for the Titlepage's simple Components.

```
\def\tp@title@simple@comps{%
204
205
     \tpDeclareGComp[\jobname]{XmpFile} % File basename of the XMP file ('.xmp' is added automatically)
     % Cover
206
     \tp@title@macro{Cover} % Path to Cover Image(!)
207
208
     %% Titles
209
     \tp@title@macro{Title} % Main Title
210
     \tp@title@macro{ShortTitle} % Shortened main title
211
     \tp@title@macro{RunTitle} % Shortened main title override for headers
212
     \tp@title@macro{AltTitle} % Alternative main title (e.g. for bastard title page)
     \tp@title@macro{Subtitle} % Sub Title
213
     \tp@title@macro{RunNames} % Shortened list of names (authors and/or publishers)
214
215
     \tp@title@macro{AltNames} % Alternative list of names (e.g. for bastard title page)
216
217
     \tp@title@macro{Series} % Series Title
218
     \tp@title@macro{SubSeries} % Series Subtitle
219
     \tp@title@macro{SeriesNote} % Series Notes
220
     \tp@title@macro{Volume} % Series Volume
```

```
\tp@title@macro{Number} % Series Number
221
222
     \tp@title@macro{EditorNameList} % Editor Text Line
223
     \tp@title@macro{SeriesEditorNameList} % Series Editor Text Line
224
225
     \tp@title@macro{Publisher} % Publisher Name
226
     \tp@title@macro{PubDivision} % Publishing Division
     \tp@title@macro{PubDivInfo} % Publishing Division Info
227
228
     \tp@title@macro{PubPlace} % Publisher Location
229
     \tp@title@macro{PubLogo} % Publisher Logo
230
     \tp@title@macro{PubNote} % Additional publisher notes
     \tp@title@macro{PubWeb} % Publisher URL
231
232
     %% Pubication Meta
233
     \tp@title@macro{PDFCreator} % Creator for pdf metadata
     \tp@title@macro[le-tex xerif]{PDFProducer} % PDF producer for pdf metadata
234
235
     \tp@title@macro{Dedication} % Dedication
236
     \tp@title@macro{Acknowledgements} % Acknowledgements
     \tp@title@macro{Statement} % Acknowledgements
237
238
     \tp@title@macro{EditionNote} % Edition Note
239
     \tp@title@macro{Editorial} % Editorial
     \tp@title@macro{Edition} % Edition
240
     \tp@title@macro{Year} % Publication Year
241
242
     \tp@title@macro{ISBNPreText} % Text before ISBN block
     \tp@title@macro{ISBN} % ISBN
243
     \tp@title@macro{ISSN} % ISSN
245
     \tp@title@macro{EISSN} % Ebook-ISSN
     \tp@title@macro{EpubPreText} % Text between ISBN and eISBN
246
     \tp@title@macro{EISBN} % Ebook-ISBN
247
     \tp@title@macro{EpubISBN} % Epub-ISBN
248
     \tp@title@macro{ElibPDF} % ???
249
     \tp@title@macro{BiblISSN} % Bibl-ISBN
250
251
     \tp@title@macro{BibleISSN} % Bible-ISBN
252
     \tp@title@macro{FundingPreText} % Text before the Funding list
253
     \tp@title@macro{FundingPostText} % Text after the Funding list
254
255
     %% Imprint Meta
256
     \tp@title@macro{Biblio} % Bibliographical Information
     \tp@title@macro{BiblioTitle} % Heading Bibliographical Information
257
258
     \tp@title@macro{Print} % Printer
259
     \tp@title@macro{PrintNote} % Print Note
     \tp@title@macro{Lectorate} % Lector
260
     \tp@title@macro{Translator} % Translator
261
262
     \tp@title@macro{CoverConcept} % Cover Concept
     \tp@title@macro{CoverDesign} % Cover Designer
263
264
     \tp@title@macro{CoverImage} % Cover Image Creator
265
     \tp@title@macro{Typesetter} % Typesetting company
     \tp@title@macro{QA} % Quality Assurance
266
     \tp@title@macro{UsedFont} % Used Font(s)
267
     \tp@title@macro{Conversion} % Data Converison
268
     \tp@title@macro{EnvDisclaimer} % Environmental Disclaimer
269
     \tp@title@macro{Advertise} % Advertisements
270
271
     %% Licencing
272
     \tp@title@macro{LicenceText} % License Description
     \tp@title@macro{LicenceLogo} % License Logo
273
     \tp@title@macro{LicenceLink} % License Link
274
     \tp@title@macro{LicenceName} % License Name
275
     \tp@title@macro{CopyrightDisclaimer} % Copyright Disclaimer
276
277
     %% for journals
278
     \tp@title@macro{JournalName} % Full name of the journal
     \tp@title@macro{JournalAbbrev} % Short name of the journal
279
     \tp@title@macro{Issue} % Issue of the journal
280
281
     \tp@title@macro{PubCycle} % Publication cycle
```

```
\tp@title@macro{Prices} % Prices of the journal issues or subscription models
282
283
     \tp@title@macro{MemberList} % In case of publishing organizations, this macro may hold a list of
         members.
     %% for single articles
284
285
     \tp@title@macro{StartPage} % Start page of a single article
     \tp@title@macro{EndPage} % End page of a single article
286
287
     \tpDeclareLabeledComp[Cite as]{CiteAs}{cite-as} % As what the article should be cited
288
     \tpDeclareLabeledComp[Submitted]{Submitted}{sumbitted} % Date the article was submitted
289
     \tpDeclareLabeledComp[Received]{Received}{received} % Date the article was recieved
290
     \tpDeclareLabeledComp[Revised]{Revised}{revised} % Date the article was revised
     \tpDeclareLabeledComp[Reviewed]{Reviewed}{reviewed} % Date the article was reviewed
291
292
     \tpDeclareLabeledComp[Accepted] {Accepted} { accepted} % Date the article was accepted
293
     \tpDeclareLabeledComp[Published]{Published} % Date the article was published
     \tpDeclareLabeledComp[Conflict of Interest]{COIStatement}{coi-statement}% Conflict of Interest
294
295
     %% Generic additional information
296
     \tp@title@macro{AddNoteI} % Additional information, title page I
297
     \tp@title@macro{AddNoteII} % Additional information, title page II
298
     \tp@title@macro{AddNoteIII} % Additional information, title page III
299
     \tp@title@macro{AddNoteIV} % Additional information, title page IV
300 }
```

Default Settings

```
\tpAddToDefault{titlepage}{%
301
302
     \tpSetProperty{article-title}{}%
     % Title page hooks
303
     % Before \tpMaketitle and outside the group
304
305
     \tpSetProperty{before-titlepage}{%
       \pagestyle{empty}%
306
       \parindent\z@
307
       \parskip\z@
308
309
     }%
310
     \tpSetProperty{after-titlepage}{\pagestyle{headings}}%
311
     % Pages of title
     %% Cover page
312
     \tpSetProperty{coverpage}{%
313
       \bgroup
314
315
         \def\thepage{\@alph\c@page}%
         \smash{\rlap{%
316
            \raise\dimexpr\headheight+\headsep+\topmargin+\topskip-\paperheight\relax
317
318
            \vtop{%
              \hskip-\oddsidemargin
319
              \includegraphics[width=\paperwidth,height=\paperheight]{\tpUseComp{Cover}}%
320
321
322
         \tpUseProperty{after-coverpage}%
323
324
325
     \tpSetProperty{after-coverpage}{\cleardoublepage}%
     \tpSetProperty{titlepage-roman}{%
326
       \tpUsePropEnv{titlepage-i}%
327
328
       \clearpage
329
       \tpUsePropEnv{titlepage-ii}%
330
       \clearpage
       \tpUsePropEnv{titlepage-iii}%
331
332
       \clearpage
333
       \tpUsePropEnv{titlepage-iv}%
```

```
\clearpage
334
335
     }%
     %% Generic meta blocks
336
337
     \tpSetProperty{generic-meta-heading-face}{\large}% format of the heading of a generic meta block
338
     \tpSetProperty{generic-meta-format}{% Format of a single generic meta-block
339
       \tpIfComp{Heading}{{\tpUseProperty{generic-meta-heading-face}\tpUseComp{Heading}\par}\vskip\
           baselineskip){}%
340
       \tpUseComp{Content}%
341
       \par%
342
     }%
343
     %% Funding
344
     \tpSetProperty{funding-columns}{2}
345
     \tpSetProperty{funding-format}{}%
```

Fallback for the width in case someone sets up a fixed value for a fund's width.

```
346
     \tpSetProperty{fund-width}{.5\textwidth}
347
     \tpSetProperty{fund-vertical-sep}{\baselineskip}%
     \tpSetProperty{fund-sep}{%
348
349
       \expandafter\@tempcnta\CalcModulo{\tpCurCount}{\tpUseProperty{funding-columns}}%
350
       351
         \par
        \ifnum\tpCurCount<\tpTotalCount\relax
352
353
          \vskip\tpUseProperty{fund-vertical-sep}%
        \fi
354
       \else
355
356
        \hfill
357
       \mathbf{fi}
     \tpSetProperty{fund-format}{% Format of a single fund/grant/sponsor
358
       \strut\vtop{%
359
        \hsize\tpUseProperty{fund-width}%
360
        \tpIfComp{FundName}{\tpUseComp{FundName}\\[1ex]}{}%
361
362
        \includegraphics[width=\tpUseProperty{fund-width}]{\tpUseComp{FundLogo}}}%
363
       \tpUseProperty{fund-sep}%
364
     \tpSetProperty{funding-sep}{4mm}%
365
     \tpSetProperty{funding-block}{%
366
       \bgroup
367
```

We set fund-width here so that the value is calculated only once and only the result is stored in the fund-width Property.

```
\tpSetPropertyX{fund-width}{\dimexpr(\textwidth/\tpUseProperty{funding-columns})-(\
368
             tpUseProperty{funding-sep}/\tpUseProperty{funding-columns})\relax}
         \tpUseProperty{funding-format}%
369
370
         \tpGetComp{FundingPreText}%
         \tpGetComp{FundingBlock}%
371
         \tpGetComp{FundingPostText}%
372
373
         \par
374
       \egroup
375
376
     %% before the roman part of the title pages but after cover page
377
     \tpSetProperty{before-titlepage-roman}{%
       \setcounter{page}{1}%
378
379
       \def\thepage{\roman{page}}%
380
381
     \tpSetProperty{titlepage-i}{%
382
       \ifmonograph
         \tpUseComp{AuthorNameList}%
383
384
       \else
385
         \tpUseProperty{EditorNameList}%
```

```
\fi%
386
387
       \vskip\baselineskip
388
       \bgroup
389
         \tpUseProperty{title-face}\tpUseComp{Title}%
390
391
       %\expandafter\meaning\csname tp@titlepage@editor-2@FullName\endcsname
392
     }%
393
     \tpSetProperty{titlepage-ii}{%
394
       \tpGetComp{Editorial}%
395
       \tpGetComp{SeriesNote}%
       \tpGetComp{GenericMetaBlock}%
396
397
       \vfill
398
       \tpUseProperty{bio-output}%
399
     }%
400
     \tpSetProperty{titlepage-iii}{%
401
       \ifmonograph
         \tpUseComp{AuthorNameList}%
402
403
       \else
404
         \tpUseProperty{EditorNameList}%
       \fi%
405
       \par
406
407
       \tpUseProperty{title-format}
408
       \tpGetComp{Edition}%
       \tpGetComp{EditionNote}%
409
       \vfill
410
       \clearpage
411
412
     }%
     \tpSetProperty{titlepage-iv}{%
413
414
       \tpGetComp{Dedication}% Dedication
415
       \tpGetComp{Acknowledgements}% Dedication
416
       \tpUseProperty{imprint-format}%
417
       \tpUseProperty{funding-block}%
       \vfill
418
       \bgroup
419
420
         \tpUseProperty{imprint-face}%
421
         \tpIfComp{Biblio}{{\bfseries\tpGetComp{BiblioTitle}}\tpGetComp{Biblio}}{}%
         \tpUseProperty{imprint-sep}%
422
         \tpUseProperty{imprint}%
423
       \egroup
424
       \clearpage
425
     }%
426
427
     %% predefined face and format Properties
     \tpSetProperty{title-face}{\Huge\sffamily\bfseries}%
428
429
     \tpSetProperty{title-format}{%
430
       \bgroup
431
         \tpUseProperty{title-face}%
         \tpUseComp{Title}\par
432
433
       \egroup
434
       \tpIfComp{Subtitle}{\tpUseProperty{subtitle-format}}{}%
       \tpGetComp{Statement}%
435
       \vskip\baselineskip
436
437
     \tpSetProperty{subtitle-face}{\Large\sffamily\bfseries}%
438
     \tpSetProperty{subtitle-format}{%
439
440
       \bgroup
441
         \tpUseProperty{subtitle-face}%
442
         \tpUseComp{Subtitle}%
443
       \egroup
444
       \par
     }%
445
446
     %% Imprint
```

```
\tpSetProperty{imprint-face}{\footnotesize}%
447
     \label{limbode} $$ \perfi^{imprint-sep}_{ifhmode} \perfi^{iddvspace}_{baselineskip}} $$
448
449
     \tpSetProperty{imprint}{%
450
       \tpUseProperty{publisher}%
451
       \tpGetComp{Qualification}%
452
       \tpGetComp{Conversion}%%
       \tpGetComp{CoverDesign}%%
453
454
       \tpGetComp{CoverImage}%%
455
       \tpGetComp{Lectorate}
456
       \tpGetComp{QA}%%
457
       \tpGetComp{Translator}%
458
       \tpGetComp{Appraiser}%%
459
       \tpGetComp{Discussion}%%
460
       \tpGetComp{Typesetter}
461
       \tpGetComp{Print}%
462
       \tpGetComp{UsedFont}
       \tpGetComp{DOI}%%
463
464
       \tpGetComp{Keywords}%%
465
       \tpUseProperty{imprint-sep}%
466
       \tpGetComp{ISBNPreText}%
467
       \tpGetComp{ISBN}%
468
       \tpGetComp{EpubPreText}%
       \tpGetComp{EISBN}%
469
470
       \tpGetComp{EpubISBN}%
471
       \tpUseProperty{imprint-sep}%
       \tpGetComp{EnvDisclaimer}%
472
473
     }%
     \tpSetProperty{journal-meta}{%
474
475
       \tpUseLabeledComp{Submitted}%
       \tpUseLabeledComp{Received}%
476
477
       \tpUseLabeledComp{Revised}%
478
       \tpUseLabeledComp{Accepted}%
479
       \tpUseLabeledComp{Published}%
       \tpUseLabeledComp{Copyright}%
480
481
       \tpUseLabeledComp{COIStatement}%
       \tpUseLabeledComp{Keywords}
482
483
     }%
484
     \tpSetProperty{licence}{%
       \tpIfComp{LicenceLogo}{\includegraphics{\tpUseComp{LicenceLogo}}\par}{}%
485
       \tpGetComp{LicenceText}%
486
487
     }%
488
     \tpSetProperty{copyright}{%
       \tpIfComp{Copyright}
489
490
         {\tpUseComp{Copyright}\par}
491
         {\textcopyright\space\tpUseComp{Year}\space\tpUseComp{Publisher},\space\tpUseComp{PubPlace
             }\par}%
492
       }%
493
     \tpSetProperty{publisher}{%
       \tpGetComp{PubDivInfo}%
494
       \tpUseProperty{copyright}%
495
496
       \tpGetComp{PubNote}%
       \tpGetComp{PubWeb}%
497
     }%
498
499
     % Name Formats
500
     \tpSetProperty{counted-meta-sep}{\ifnum\tpCurCount<\tpTotalCount\relax\vskip\baselineskip\fi}%</pre>
           separator between multiple instances of the same meta datum
501
     \tpSetProperty{counted-name-sep}{% Separator between multiple names; titlepage-specific override of
          the same Property in coco-meta!
       \ifnum\tpTotalCount>1\relax
502
503
         \ifnum\tpCurCount<\tpTotalCount\relax
           \ifnum\tpCurCount<\numexpr\tpTotalCount-1\relax
504
```

```
\tpUseProperty{name-sep}%
505
506
507
            \tpUseProperty{name-and}%
508
          \fi
509
        \fi
510
       \fi
511
     }%
512
     % Aliasses for different Roles, see coco-meta.sty for the actual Property values:
513
514
     \tpPropertyLet{editor-cite-name-format} {role-cite-name-format}%
     \tpPropertyLet{editor-short-cite-name-format} {role-short-cite-name-format}%
515
516
     \tpPropertyLet{editor-full-name-format} {role-full-name-format}%
     \tpPropertyLet{editor-pdfinfo-name-format} {role-pdfinfo-name-format}%
517
     \tpPropertyLet{editor-correspondence-as-format} {role-correspondence-string-format}%
518
519
520
     \tpPropertyLet{editor-list-print-format} {role-block-print-format}%
     \tpPropertyLet{editor-list-cite-format} {role-block-cite-format}%
52.1
522
     \tpPropertyLet{editor-list-short-cite-format} {role-block-short-cite-format}%
523
     \tpPropertyLet{editor-list-pdfinfo-format} {role-block-pdfinfo-format}%
524
     \tpPropertyLet{editor-list-correspondence-format} {role-block-correspondence-format}%
525
     %% series-editors:
     \tpPropertyLet{series-editor-cite-name-format} {role-cite-name-format}%
526
     \tpPropertyLet{series-editor-short-cite-name-format} {role-short-cite-name-format}%
527
     \tpPropertyLet{series-editor-full-name-format} {role-full-name-format}%
528
529
     \tpPropertyLet{series-editor-pdfinfo-name-format} {role-pdfinfo-name-format}%
     \tpPropertyLet{series-editor-correspondence-as-format} {role-correspondence-as-format}%
530
531
     \tpPropertyLet{series-editor-list-print-format} {role-block-print-format}%
532
533
     \tpPropertyLet{series-editor-list-cite-format} {role-block-cite-format}%
     \tpPropertyLet{series-editor-list-short-cite-format} {role-block-short-cite-format}%
534
535
     \tpPropertyLet{series-editor-list-pdfinfo-format} {role-block-pdfinfo-format}%
536
     \tpPropertyLet{series-editor-list-correspondence-format} {role-block-correspondence-format}%
537
     %% name Separators
     \tpSetProperty{editor-suffix-sgl}{(Ed.)}%
538
539
     \tpSetProperty{editor-suffix-pl}{(Eds.)}%
540
     \tpSetProperty{editor-suffix}{%
541
       \space
       \ifnum\tpTotalCount=\@ne\relax
542
         \tpUseProperty{editor-suffix-sgl}%
543
       \else
544
        \tpUseProperty{editor-suffix-pl}%
545
546
       \fi
     }%
547
548
     % Biography
549
     % those Properties control how (Role specific) Biography Blocks are formatted, i.e. the list of all
         Biographies of a specific Role:
550
     \tpSetProperty{role-bio-block-face}{}% face for the entire, role-specific, Biography Block
551
     \tpSetProperty{role-bio-block-format}{{\tpUseProperty{role-bio-block-face}\tpUseComp{Biography
         }}\par}% Format of the whole, Role specific, Biography Block
     \tpPropertyLet{author-bio-block-format} {role-bio-block-format}% Override for single author meta
552
     \tpPropertyLet{editor-bio-block-format} {role-bio-block-format}% Override for single editor meta
553
     \tpPropertyLet{series-editor-bio-block-format} {role-bio-block-format}% Override for single
554
         series editor meta info
     % those Properties control how a (Role specific) Biography is formatted:
555
     \tpSetProperty{role-biography-format}{{\bfseries\tpUseComp{FullName}:}\space\tpUseComp{Bio}\
556
         par}% Format of a single entry in the Role specific Biography
     \tpPropertyLet{author-biography-format} {role-biography-format}% Override for single author meta
557
```

```
558
     \tpPropertyLet{editor-biography-format} {role-biography-format}% Override for single editor meta
559
     \tpPropertyLet{series-editor-biography-format} {role-biography-format}% Override for single
         series editor meta info
560
     \tpSetProperty{bio-output-format}{%
561
       \tpGetComp{AuthorBioBlock}%
       \tpGetComp{EditorBioBlock}%
562
563
       \tpGetComp{SeriesEditorBioBlock}%
564
565
     % Running headers
     \tpSetProperty{run-book-title}{%
566
       \tpIfComp{RunTitle}
567
         {\tpUseComp{RunTitle}}
568
         {\tpIfComp{ShortTitle}
569
570
          {\tpUseComp{ShortTitle}}
          {\tpIfComp{Title}{\tpUseComp{Title}}{No title given!}}}%
571
572
     }%
573
     \tpSetProperty{run-book-name}{%
       \tpIfComp{RunNames}
574
         {\tpUseComp{RunNames}}
575
         {\ifmonograph
576
           \tpIfComp{AuthorNameList}
577
578
             {\tpUseComp{AuthorNameList}}
579
             {no author defined!}%
         \else
580
           \tpIfComp{EditorNameList}
581
             {\tpUseComp{EditorNameList}}
582
             {no editor defined!}%
583
         \fi}%
584
585
     }%
586 }
```

587 %</title>

Modul 10

coco-floats.dtx

This module provides handlers for floating objects like tables and figures common to all CoCoTeX projects

```
24 %<*floats>

25 %%
26 %% module for CoCoTeX that extends floating objects.
27 %%
28 %% Maintainer: p.schulz@le-tex.de
29 %%
30 %% lualatex - texlive > 2019
31 %%
32 \NeedsTeXFormat{LaTeX2e}[2018/12/01]
33 \ProvidesPackage{coco-floats}
34 [2024/01/29 0.4.0 CoCoTeX floats module]
35 \DeclareOptionX{nofigs}{\global\let\tp@nofigs\relax}
\ProcessOptionsX
```

1 Package Setup

1.1 Hard requirements

```
RequirePackage{coco-common}
RequirePackage{rotating}
RequirePackage{grffile}
RequirePackage{footnote}
RequirePackage[Export]{adjustbox}

setcounter{dblbotnumber}{5}
```

1.2 Document Class Option overrides

for automatic type setting and float positioning, we set very high tolerances in macros from \LaTeX 's standard

2 .clo

files:

```
44 \def\topfraction{0.9}
45 \def\textfraction{0.1}
46 \def\bottomfraction{0.8}
```

```
47 \def\totalnumber{8}
48 \def\topnumber{8}
49 \def\bottomnumber{8}
50 \def\floatpagefraction{0.8}
51 \@fptop\z@
52 \@fpbot\@flushglue
```

2.1 Internal registers

Some reserved box registers for measuring, the first one, \tp@floatbox, is for the whole float, the second one, \tp@subfltbox, is for a single sub-float. The third one, \tp@calcfltbox, is used to calculate the overall dimensions of the float.

```
53  \newbox \tp@floatbox
54  \newbox \tp@subfltbox
55  \newbox \tp@calcfltbox
```

Internal counters: \tpSubFloatCnt counts the sub-floats within a single float, \tp@int@flt@cnt is the internal global counter for all floats.

```
\newcount\tpSubFloatCnt \tpSubFloatCnt=\z@\relax \newcount\tp@int@flt@cnt \tp@int@flt@cnt\z@
```

Various dimension registers that store dimensions and spaces of floats and sub-floats:

- \tp@subflt@maxheight stores and self-updates the height of the largest sub-float inside a float
- \tp@subflt@sep is the space between sub-floats
- \tp@total@flt@width stores the cumulated overall width of the entire float
- \tp@calc@flt@width is an internal dimension used to calculate the ratio between mutiple sub-floats that should be scaled to the same height
- \tp@total@flt@height is the overall height of a float
- \tp@total@flt@depth is the overall depth of a float

```
\newdimen\tp@subflt@maxheight \tp@subflt@maxheight=\z@\relax
\newdimen\tp@subflt@sep \tp@subflt@sep=\fboxsep\relax
\newdimen\tp@total@flt@width \tp@total@flt@width=\textwidth\relax
\newdimen\tp@calc@flt@width \tp@calc@flt@width=\tp@total@flt@width\relax
\newdimen\tp@total@flt@height \tp@total@flt@height=\textwidth\relax
\newdimen\tp@total@flt@depth \tp@total@flt@depth=\textwidth\relax
```

Those two dimensions are used to pass the intext-skip and float-skip Properties to the render engine for spacing above and below the float, respectively.

```
\newskip\tp@flt@sep@top \tp@flt@sep@top=\z@\relax \newskip\tp@flt@sep@bottom \tp@flt@sep@bottom=\z@\relax
```

Internal dimensions for the horizontal margins (right, left, inner and outer, respectively)

```
\newdimen\tp@flt@marg@r \tp@flt@marg@r=\z@\relax
\newdimen\tp@flt@marg@l \tp@flt@marg@l=\z@\relax
\newdimen\tp@flt@marg@i \tp@flt@marg@i=\z@\relax
\newdimen\tp@flt@marg@o \tp@flt@marg@o=\z@\relax
```

Locally adjustable switch to allow captions to break across pages

```
70 \newif\if@tp@flt@break@capt \@tp@flt@break@captfalse
```

String definitions for Property value comparisons

```
71 \def\tp@str@figure{figure}
72 \def\tp@str@table{table}
73 \def\tp@str@bottom{bottom}
74 \def\tp@str@top{top}
```

2.2 AtBeginDocument hook

```
75 \AtBeginDocument{%
```

Storing the final definitions of \label

```
\global\let\tpltx@label\label
```

implementing the nofigs option, doing some minor adjustments to the htmltabs package and store the final definition of includegraphics.

```
77
    \ifx\tp@nofigs\relax
78
      \renewcommand\includegraphics[2][]{}%
79
    \global\let\tpltx@includegraphics\includegraphics
80
```

Adjustments to the htmltabs package, if it is used:

```
\@ifpackageloaded{htmltabs}
81
      {\global\let\tp@uses@htmltabs\relax
82
       \def\ht@adjust@linewidth{%
83
84
         \advance\ht@h@offset\leftskip
85
         \advance\ht@h@offset\@totalleftmargin
        %\advance\linewidth-\leftskip
86
87
         \advance\linewidth-\rightskip
       }%
88
      }{}%
```

In order to catch the actual dimensions of the float box, we need to hook into LATEX's \@endfloatbox macro. This macro is low-level enough so it covers regular, double-column, and rotated floats. Those values will later be written into the .aux file for each float. The values, together with the float's overall width, are stored in a macro called tp-float-\the\tp@int@flt@cnt-dimens.

```
\gappto\@endfloatbox{%
90
      \global\tp@total@flt@height=\ht\@currbox\relax%
91
      \global\tp@total@flt@depth=\dp\@currbox\relax%
92
   }%
93
94 }%
```

Internal macros

3.1 Generic resetter

\tp@flt@reset@defaults resets the parameters for sub-floats.

```
#1
      the caption type (e.g., figure, table)
```

abbreviation of the caption list (e.g., standard LATEX uses lof for the List of Figures, lot for the List of Tables) #2

```
\def\tp@flt@reset@defaults{%
     \global\tpSubFloatCnt=\z@
96
97
     \global\tp@total@flt@width=\z@
     \global\let\tp@has@capt@top\@undefined
98
99
     \global\let\tp@has@capt@bottom\@undefined
     \global\let\tp@has@subcapt@top\@undefined
100
     \global\let\tp@has@subcapt@bottom\@undefined
101
     \global\let\tp@sub@contentsline@store\@empty
102
     \global\tp@subflt@maxheight=\z@\relax
103
104
     \ensuremath{\texttt{Qtempcnta}=\z@\mathbf{relax}}
     \tp@reset@components{\tp@cur@cont}%
105
     \let\tp@prefix\@empty
106
     \let\ht@cur@element\tp@captype
107
     \global\let\tp@current@class\relax
108
109 }
```

3.2 Internal macros that handle Attributes

\tp@get@flt@attr invokes the parser for the optional argument of float environments.

- is the content of the optional argument, #1
- #2 is the caption type.

```
110 \def\tp@get@flt@attr#1#2{%
111
     \mathbf{if}!#1!\else
       \tpParseAttributes{#2}{#1}%
112
       \tpIfAttr{#2}{class}
113
         {\global\letcs\tp@current@class{tp@#2@attr@class}%
114
          \tpUseClass{default}{\tp@captype}%
115
          \expandafter\tpUseClass\expandafter{\csname tp@#2@attr@class\endcsname}{\tp@captype}}
116
117
         \tpIfAttr{#2}{break-caption}{\@tp@flt@break@capttrue}{}%
118
     \fi
119
     \tp@get@flt@pos{#2}}
120
```

\tp@get@flt@pos is the handler for determining the floating position. Some float Properties and Attributes restrict and override the explicit float positions, e.g., fully rotated floats must be positioned in p mode (i.e., as float page). #1 is the caption type.

```
121 \def\tp@get@flt@pos#1{%
     \tpIfAttr{#1}{float-pos}
122
       {\letcs\tp@fps{tp@#1@attr@float-pos}}
123
       {\let\tp@fps\@empty}%
124
125
     \def\@tempa{h!}\ifx\tp@fps\@tempa\let\tp@fps\@empty\fi
126
     \def\@tempa{h}\ifx\tp@fps\@tempa\def\tp@fps{htbp!}\fi
     \ifx\tp@do@dblfloat\relax
127
       \ifx \times \ensuremath{\mbox{def}} \ensuremath{\mbox{def}} \htpb! \fi 11514
128
       \linewidth\dimexpr2\columnwidth+\columnsep\relax
129
130
       \hsize\linewidth\relax
131
     \tpIfAttrStr{#1}{orientation}{landscape}
132
       {\linewidth\textheight
133
        \hsize\linewidth
134
        \def\tp@fps{p}}
135
136
       {}}
```

\tp@set@flt@env determines the low-level LATEX float environment depending on orientation and document options. If no float-pos is given (implicitely or determined), the object is not treated as a float at all.

```
\def\tp@set@flt@env{%
137
                        \ifx\tp@fps\@empty
138
                                  \let\tp@b@float\relax
139
                                  \let\tp@e@float\relax
140
                                  \ifhmode\par\fi
141
                         \else
142
143
                                  \let\tp@b@float\tp@captype%
                                 \tpIfAttrStr{\tp@captype}{orientation}{landscape}
144
                                           {\edef\@tp@b@float{sideways\tp@b@float}%
145
                                              \label{location} $$ \ed f \to {\bf \hat{x}} \to \frac{1}{3} . $$ \ed f \to \frac{1}{3} . 
146
                                              \redef\tp@e@float{\noexpand\end{\@tp@b@float\ifx\tp@do@dblfloat\relax*\fi}}}
147
148
                                           {\edef\tp@flt@env{\ifx\tp@do@dblfloat\relax dbl\fi}%
149
                                              \edef\tp@b@float{\expandafter\noexpand\csname @x\tp@flt@env float\endcsname {\tp@captype
                                                                    }[\tp@fps]}%
                                              \edef\tp@e@float{\expandafter\noexpand\csname end@\tp@flt@env float\endcsname}}%
150
                            \{fi\}
151
```

\tp@flt@debug prints some debug information to stdout for a single float that has the Attribute debug set.

```
\def\tp@flt@debug#1{%
152
153
    \tpIfAttr{#1}{debug}
154
    {\message{^^J[tp Float Debug]^^J
        Textheight:\space\the\textheight^^J
155
        Type:\space\space\space\space\tp@cur@cont^^J
156
157
   \ifx\tp@captype\tp@str@figure
        Path: \space\space\space\space\space\@tp@fig@path^^J
158
159
   \fi
        Class:\space\space\space\space\space\tp@current@class^^J
160
        Floatpos:\space\space\tp@fps^^J
161
        Environ:\space\space\space\space\space\expandafter\noexpand\tp@b@float...\expandafter\noexpand\
162
            tp@e@float^^J
        Subfloat:\space\space\the\tpSubFloatCnt^^J
163
   \ifnum\tpSubFloatCnt=\z@
164
        Width:\space\space\space\space\space\the\tp@total@flt@width^^J
165
        Height:\space\space\space\space\the\tp@total@flt@height^^J
166
        Depth:\space\space\space\space\space\the\tp@total@flt@depth^^J
167
   \else
168
        Width \the\tpSubFloatCnt:\space\space\space\space\space\expandafter\meaning\csname
169
            tp@\tp@cur@cont @width-\the\tpSubFloatCnt\endcsname^^J
        Height \the\tpSubFloatCnt:\space\space\space\space \expandafter\meaning\csname tp@\
170
            tp@cur@cont @height-\the\tpSubFloatCnt\endcsname^^J
        Depth \the\tpSubFloatCnt:\space\space\space\space\expandafter\meaning\csname
171
            tp@\tp@cur@cont @depth-\the\tpSubFloatCnt\endcsname^^J
172 \fi}}{}}
```

\tp@get@seps determines the top and bottom skips dependent on float position and orientation

```
173
   \def\tp@get@seps{%
     \ifx\tp@fps\@empty
174
       \expandafter\tp@flt@sep@top\dimexpr\tpUseProperty{intext-skip-top}\relax%
175
     \else
176
177
       \expandafter\tp@flt@sep@top\dimexpr\tpUseProperty{float-skip-top}\relax%
178
179
       \tpIfAttrStr{\tp@captype}{orientation}{landscape}{}
180
         {\ifx\tp@fps\@empty
181
           \expandafter\tp@flt@sep@bottom\dimexpr\tpUseProperty{intext-skip-bottom}\relax%
         \else
182
```

```
\expandafter\tp@flt@sep@bottom\dimexpr\tpUseProperty{float-skip-bottom}\relax%
\fi}}
```

\tp@set@*@sep Hooks to apply top and bottom skips, respectively.

4 Float Container and Component Declarations

\tpMakeFltComp is a shortcut for float Component declarations. #1 is the generic name of the Component.

```
187 \def\tpMakeFltComp#1{%
    \tp@def@counted@comp{#1-\the\tpSubFloatCnt}{#1}{\ifx\tp@is@subflt\relax\else\tpSubFloatCnt=\z@
    \relax\fi){}%

189 }
```

\tpMakeFltCompL is a shortcut to declare Float Components together with their *list*-of overrides. #1 is the generic name of the Component.

\tp@flt@set@hsize calculates the available maximum width for the float contents and captions according to the values of the margin-right and the margin-left properties.

```
193
   \def\tp@flt@set@hsize{%
194
     \expandafter\tp@subflt@sep\tpUseProperty{sub-float-sep}\relax%
     \global\tp@total@flt@width=\hsize\relax
195
196
     \expandafter\tp@flt@marg@l\tpUseProperty{margin-left}\relax
197
     \expandafter\tp@flt@marg@r\tpUseProperty{margin-right}\relax
198
     \expandafter\tp@flt@marg@i\tpUseProperty{margin-inner}\relax
     \expandafter\tp@flt@marg@o\tpUseProperty{margin-outer}\relax
199
     \tp@flt@set@margins
200
     \verb|\global| advance| \verb|\tp@total@flt@width-\tp@flt@marg@r| relax|
201
202
     }
```

\tp@flt@set@margins realises inner and outer margins via the left and right margins.

```
\def\tp@flt@set@margins{%
203
     \tp@test@page
204
     \if@tp@odd
205
       \advance\tp@flt@marg@l\tp@flt@marg@i
206
       \advance\tp@flt@marg@r\tp@flt@marg@o
207
208
       \advance\tp@flt@marg@l\tp@flt@marg@o
209
       \advance\tp@flt@marg@r\tp@flt@marg@i
210
211
     \fi
212 }
```

```
\tpDeclareContainer{float}{%
213
     \tpDeclareType{Components}{%
214
       \tpMakeFltCompL{Caption}%
215
       \tpMakeFltCompL{Legend}%
216
217
       \tpMakeFltCompL{Source}%
       \tpMakeFltCompL{Number}%
218
       \tpMakeFltComp{RefLabel}%
219
220
       \tpMakeFltComp{AltText}% neu: 2023-06-08; TODO: muss noch implementiert werden
221
     \tpDeclareType{Properties}{}%
222
223 }
```

\tpDeclareFloat is the user-level macro used to (re-)declare a (new) tpFloat environment.

```
#1
      Name of the float Container from which the declared Container should inherit Properties (optional)
```

- #2 top-level name of the float environment (e.g., tpTable, tpFigure)
- #3 caption type (e.g., table, figure)
- #4 list (e.g., 1ot, 1of)
- #5 Property list

```
224 \def\tpDeclareFloat{\tp@opt@empty\@tpDeclareFloat}
225 \long\def\@tpDeclareFloat[#1]#2#3#4#5{%
    \def\tp@float@parent{#1}%
226
```

If the float Container has already been declared, we only load its parent's Properties and Containers (if any), and add the override Properties to the Container's Property List. Otherwise, we would re-load the system's defaults and override the Properties of the earlier Declaration.

```
227
     \ifcsdef{tp@container@#2}{%
       \tpPackageInfo{Floats}{}{Appending to '#2'}%
228
229
       \ifx\tp@float@parent\@empty\else
230
        \tpPackageError{Float}{Type}
231
          {Attempt to change parent of pre-existing float^^JContainer '#2'}
232
          {You cannot use the optional argument of \string\tpDeclareFloat\space for pre-existing^^J
233 float containers!^^J^^J%
   Use \string\tpAddToType{<Type>}{#2}{<code>}\space to alter the #2 container!}
234
235
       \tpAddToType{Properties}{#2}{#5}%
236
```

Other than Properties, the Float's default caption type or list-of handler may also be overridden by a re-definition.

```
237
       \tpAddToType{FloatEnvInfo}{#2}{%
238
         \def\tp@captype{#3}%
         \def\tp@caplisttype{#4}%
239
240
       }%
     } {%
241
```

Otherwise, we declare a new Container and invoke all the Initializers.

```
242
       \tpDeclareContainer{#2}{%
243
         \tpPackageInfo{Floats}{}{Declaring float '#2'}%
         \ifx\tp@float@parent\@empty
244
245
          \tpInherit{Properties,Components}{float}
246
         \else
247
           \tpInherit{Properties,Components}{\tp@float@parent}
248
249
         \tpDeclareType{FloatEnvInfo}{%
250
          \tpNamespace{#2}%
```

```
251 \def\tp@captype{#3}%

252 \def\tp@caplisttype{#4}%

253 }% /FloatEnvInfo
```

The macro actually defines two LATeX environments; a normal one for one-column floats, and a starred one for page-wide floats in two-column mode.

Generating the Handlers for the list-of entries and define the corresponding 10 macros

```
\tp@flt@generate@listof@handlers{#4}{#3}{#2}%
259
         \bgroup
260
261
           \def\tp@cur@cont{#2}%
           \tp@init@l@[list-of]{#4}{0}{#3}% Generate listof-Entries for first level floats
262
           \tp@init@l@[list-of]{#4}{1}{sub#3}% Generate listof-Entries for sub-floats
263
         \egroup
264
         \tpDeclareType{Properties}{#5}%
265
       }% /container
266
267
     }% /ifcsdef{tp@app@container@#2}
268 }
```

\tp@flt@generate@listof@handlers generates handlers for listof-entries.

```
#1 is the file ending#2 is the caption type#3 is the Container name
```

```
269 \def\tp@flt@generate@listof@handlers#1#2#3{%
```

tp@<list>@extract@data The first macro that is dynamicly defined, is the Component collector.

```
##1 is a numeric level that represents the order of the listof-entries
##2 is the caption type
##3 is the content of the 1@<level> macro
##4 is the page number associated with that entry.
```

```
\expandafter\gdef\csname tp@#1@extract@data\endcsname##1##2##3##4{%
270
       \tpNamespace{#3}%
271
       \tpEvalType[#3]{Properties}%
272
       \tpDeclareComp{ListofCaption}{}{}%
273
       \tpDeclareComp{ListofLegend}{}{}%
274
       \tpDeclareComp{ListofSource}{}{}%
275
       \tpDeclareComp{ListofNumber}{}{}%
276
       \tpDeclareComp{ListofPage}{}{}%
277
       \tpListofPage{\tpUseProperty{list-of-page-face}##4}%
278
279
       \tp@expand@l@contents{##3}{#3}{Listof}{Caption}
       \tp@format@number{list-of-}{Listof}{##1}%
280
281
     }%
```

\csname tp@<list>@print@entry\endcsname The second dynamically defined macro is the entry renderer. It applies the Listof properties and selects the components to be printed. ##1 is the caption type of the float.

```
\expandafter\gdef\csname tp@#1@print@entry\endcsname##1{%
282
       \bgroup
283
         \tpUseHook{list-of-before-hook-##1}%
284
         \tpUseProperty{list-of-before-entry}%
285
286
         \tpUseProperty{list-of-block}%
         \tpUseHook{list-of-after-hook-##1}%
287
         \tpUseProperty{list-of-after-entry}%
288
289
       \egroup}%
```

\csname tp@make@listof@<type>\endcsname The last macro to be defined here is the list-of writer. This macro is responsible to write the entry into TeX's auxiliary file system. ##1 is the name of the "level" for the entry.

```
290
     \expandafter\gdef\csname tp@make@listof@#2\endcsname##1{%
291
       \tpGobble
292
       \tp@flt@check@empty{Number}{number}%
293
       \tp@flt@check@empty{Caption}{caption}%
       \tp@flt@check@empty{Legend}{legend}%
294
       \tp@flt@check@empty{Source}{source}%
295
296
       \tpIfAttrIsset{#2}{nolist}{}
297
         {\let\@tp@listof@entry\relax
298
        \tpIfComp{ListofCaption}{\csgappto{@tp@listof@entry}{\string\tpListofCaption{\tpUseComp{
             ListofCaption}}}}{
        \tpIfComp{ListofNumber}{\csgappto{@tp@listof@entry}{\string\tpListofNumber{\tpUseComp{
299
             ListofNumber}}}{{}}
300
        \tpIfComp{ListofLegend}{\csgappto{@tp@listof@entry}{\string\tpListofLegend{\tpUseComp{
             ListofLegend}}}}{{
301
        \tpIfComp{ListofSource}{\csgappto{@tp@listof@entry}{\string\tpListofSource{\tpUseComp{
             ListofSource}}}}{}
        \ifx\@tp@listof@entry\relax
302
          \ifx\tp@is@subflt\relax\else
303
            \tp@restore@contentsline
304
          \fi
305
306
         \else
           \protected@edef\tp@listof@entry{\@tp@listof@entry}%
307
          \ifx\tp@is@subflt\relax
308
            \tp@store@sub@contentsline{#1}{\tp@captype}{\expandonce{\tp@listof@entry}}%
309
          \else
310
            \tp@flt@addcontentsline{#1}{\tp@captype}{\expandonce{\tp@listof@entry}}%
311
312
            \tp@restore@contentsline
313
          \fi
        \fi
314
      }%
315
     }%
316
317 }
```

\tp@store@sub@contentsline saves the contentsline macros for prematurely expanded captions.

If we immediately write the list-of entries for sub-floats into the list-of files, they will be printed before their respective parent entry. This is because sub-floats are processed before their parent floats. To avoid the wrong order in the list-of, we progressively store the sub-float's addcontentsline commands in the \tp@sub@contentsline@store macro and expand it after the list-of for the parent float has been processed.

```
318 \def\tp@store@sub@contentsline#1#2#3{%
319
     \protected@xdef\tp@sub@contentsline@store{\expandonce{\tp@sub@contentsline@store}\noexpand\
         tp@flt@addcontentsline{#1}{#2}{#3}\relax}}
```

\tp@restore@contetnsline restores and expands the list of sub-float addcontentsline commands, if there are any.

```
320 \def\tp@restore@contentsline{%
321
     \ifx\tp@sub@contentsline@store\@empty\else
       \tp@sub@contentsline@store
322
323
       \global\let\tp@sub@contentsline@store\@empty
324
     \fi
325 }
```

\tp@flt@addcontentsline fork of LATEX's \addtocontents macro

- extension of the list file
- #2 caption type; passed to the first argument of LATEX's \contentsline
- the entry itself; passed to the second argument of LATEX's \contentsline #3

```
\def\tp@flt@addcontentsline#1#2#3{%
326
     \protected@write\@auxout
327
328
       {\tpGobble}%
       {\string\@writefile{#1}{\protect\tpContentsline{#2}{#3}{\thepage}{\@currentHref}\
329
           protected@file@percent}}\relax
330 }
```

\tp@flt@check@empty fork of CoCoTeX kernel's \tp@check@empty, probably DEPRECATED(?)

```
331
   \def\tp@flt@check@empty#1#2{%
     \ifx\tp@is@subflt\relax\else\tpSubFloatCnt\z@\fi
332
     \tpIfComp{Listof#1}
333
334
335
       {\tpIfComp{#1}
         {\csletcs{tp@\tp@cur@cont @Listof#1-\the\tpSubFloatCnt}{tp@\tp@cur@cont @#1-\the\
336
             tpSubFloatCnt}}
337
         {\csname Listof#1\endcsname{}}}}
```

Label and Referencing mechanisms 5

\tp@flt@create@counters creates auto-numbered counters. We advance the caption type only locally since they are automatically and globally updated when \tp@make@anchors is called.

```
\def\tp@flt@create@counters{%
338
339
     \tpIfAttrIsset{\tp@captype}{nonumber}{}
       {\tpIfPropVal{numbering}{auto}
340
         {\tpIfComp{number-0}
341
342
            {\expandafter\advance\csname c@\tp@captype\endcsname\@ne\relax
343
            \tp@set@label{0}%
344
345
            \expandafter\advance\csname c@\tp@captype\endcsname\m@ne\relax
346
347
         \ifnum\tpSubFloatCnt=\z@\relax\else
348
           \@tempcnta\z@
           \tp@iterate{\@tempcnta}{\@ne}{\tpSubFloatCnt}{%
349
             \tpIfComp{number-\the\@tempcnta}
350
351
               {\tpIfAttr{\tp@captype}{subfloat}
352
353
                  {\tp@set@sublabel{\the\@tempcnta}}
                  {\expandafter\advance\csname c@\tp@captype\endcsname\@ne\relax
354
355
                  \tp@set@label{\the\@tempcnta}%
                  \expandafter\advance\csname c@\tp@captype\endcsname\m@ne\relax}}}%
356
```

```
\fi}
357
358
           {}%
359
       }}
```

\tp@set@label generates the first level float counter. #1 is the sub-float counter.

```
\def\tp@set@label#1{%
     \expandafter\expandafter\expandafter\edef\expandafter\csname tp@\tp@cur@cont @number-#1\
361
         expandafter\endcsname\expandafter{\csname the\tp@captype\endcsname}%
362 }
```

\tp@set@sublabel generates second level counters for numbered sub-floats. #1 is the sub-float counter

TODO: float-number und sub-number sollten beides Components sein, nicht Properties!

```
363 \def\tp@set@sublabel#1{%
     \tpSetValProp{float-number}{\csname tp@\tp@cur@cont @number-0\endcsname}%
364
365
     \tpSetValProp{sub-number}{%
366
       \begingroup
        \expandonce{\tpUseProperty{sub-number-face}}%
367
        \relax\tpUseProperty{sub-number-before}%
368
        \csname @\tpUseProperty{sub-number-style}\endcsname{#1}%
369
        \tpUseProperty{sub-number-after}%
370
       \endgroup}%
371
     \expandafter\expandafter\expandafter\edef\expandafter\csname tp@\tp@cur@cont @number-#1\
372
         expandafter\endcsname\expandafter{\tpUseProperty{sub-number-format}}%
373 }
```

The next two macros are a re-implementation of hyperref's anchor mechanism to make labels work. If no explicit label is given, the mechanism generates one, unique to each (sub)float.

\tp@make@anchors iterates through the (sub-)floats of a float Container instance and generates the anchor (and hidden label, if necessary) for each of them

```
374 \def\tp@make@anchors{\@tempcnta\z@\tp@iterate{\@tempcnta}{\z@}{\tpSubFloatCnt}{\tp@make@anchor{\
       the \@tempcnta } }
```

\tp@make@anchors generates the anchor and label of a single (sub-)float. #1 is the value of the internal sub-float counter.

```
375 \def\tp@make@anchor#1{%
     \bgroup
376
       \tpSubFloatCnt#1\relax
377
       \tpIfComp{RefLabel}
378
         {\expandafter\let\expandafter\@currentlabel\csname tp@\tp@cur@cont @number-\the\
379
             tpSubFloatCnt\endcsname}
380
         {\edef\@currentlabel{tp-\tp@cur@cont-number-\the\tp@int@flt@cnt}}%
       \expandafter\H@refstepcounter\expandafter{\tp@captype}%
381
       \expandafter\hyper@makecurrent\expandafter{\tp@captype}%
382
       \global\let\Hy@tempa\Hy@float@caption
383
       \expandafter\hyper@@anchor\expandafter{\@currentHref}{\relax}%
384
       \tpIfComp{RefLabel}
385
386
         {\expandafter\let\expandafter\@currentlabel\csname tp@\tp@cur@cont @number-\the\
             tpSubFloatCnt\endcsname
         \edef\@tempa{\tpUseComp{RefLabel}}%
387
         \expandafter\tpltx@label\expandafter{\@tempa}}{\relax}%
388
     \egroup}
389
```

Processing the Float

Common Float and Sub-Float Environments

\tp@float is a mid-level Macro that provides the common floating LATEX environment. #1 is the float environment's kv-attribute list.

#1 float position (optional)

```
\def\tp@float{\tp@opt@empty\@tp@float}
390
   \def\@tp@float[#1]{%
391
     \par
392
     \begingroup
393
       \global\advance\tp@int@flt@cnt\@ne
394
       \tpEvalType{FloatEnvInfo}%
395
       \tp@flt@reset@defaults
396
       \tpToggleCountedCond
397
398
       \tpEvalType{Properties}%
399
       \tp@get@flt@attr{#1}{\tp@captype}%
       \tp@flt@set@hsize
400
401
       \tp@get@seps
       \tpEvalType{Components}%
402
       \tpUseProperty{before-float}%
403
       \tp@set@flt@env
404
405
       \ifx\tp@fps\@empty\else\savenotes\fi
406 }
```

\endtp@float is the end of the common float environment.

```
\def\endtp@float{%
407
                                 \tp@b@float
408
                                 \tp@set@top@sep
409
                                 \tp@test@caption{0}{capt}{top}%
410
411
                                  \tp@test@caption{0}{capt}{bottom}%
412
                                  \tp@flt@create@counters%
                                  \tp@flt@compose
413
                                  \tp@save@page
414
                                 \tp@set@bot@sep
415
                                 \tp@e@float
416
                                 \tp@flt@debug{\tp@captype}%
417
                                 \fint {\bf ifx} \ensuremath{\tt ifx}\ensuremath{\tt 
418
                         \endgroup
419
                         \immediate\write\@auxout
420
                                  {\string\expandafter\string\gdef\string\csname\space tp-float-\the\tp@int@flt@cnt-dimens\
421
                                                      string\endcsname{%
                                                    {\the\tp@total@flt@width}%
422
423
                                                    {\the\tp@total@flt@height}%
424
                                                   {\the\tp@total@flt@depth}%
425
                          \global\let\tp@current@class\relax
426
427 }
```

\tpSubFloat is the user-level environment for sub-floats

TODO: transform into a Component Group

```
428 \def\tpSubFloat{%
429 \ifx\tp@is@subflt\relax
```

```
\PackageError{coco-floats.sty}{Nested tpSubFloats detected!}{You cannot (yet) nest a '
430
           tpSubFloat' environment into another 'tpSubFloat' environment!}%
431
     \else
432
       \let\tp@is@subflt\relax
433
       \global\advance\tpSubFloatCnt\@ne
434
       \ignorespaces
     \{fi\}
435
```

\endtpSubFloat is the end of the sub-float environment

```
436 \def\endtpSubFloat{%
437
    \tpUseProperty{subfloat-handler}%
    \expandafter\xdef\csname tp@\tp@cur@cont @width-\the\tpSubFloatCnt\endcsname{\the\wd\
438
        tp@subfltbox}%
    \expandafter\xdef\csname tp@\tp@cur@cont @height-\the\tpSubFloatCnt\endcsname{\the\ht\
439
        tp@subfltbox}%
    \expandafter\xdef\csname tp@\tp@cur@cont @depth-\the\tpSubFloatCnt\endcsname{\the\dp\
440
        tp@subfltbox}%
    \@tempdima=\dimexpr\the\ht\tp@subfltbox+\the\dp\tp@subfltbox\relax
441
    \@tempdimb=\dimexpr\the\wd\tp@subfltbox\relax
442
    \ifdim\@tempdima>\tp@subflt@maxheight\relax
443
      \global\tp@subflt@maxheight=\@tempdima\relax
444
445
    \fi
    \ignorespaces
446
447
    \tpIfAttr{\tp@captype}{subfloat}
      448
      {\csname tp@make@listof@\tp@captype\endcsname{\tp@captype}}% subfloats are counted separately
449
     \setbox\tp@subfltbox\box\voidb@x
450
    \let\tp@is@subflt\@undefined
451
452 }
```

6.2 Processing the Contents of the Float Environment

\tp@flt@process prints the contents of a float environment.

```
453 \def\tp@flt@process{%
454
     \tp@test@subcapt
     \ifx\tp@has@capt@top\@empty\leavevmode\fi
455
456
     \tp@make@outer@caption{top}%
     \ifnum\tpSubFloatCnt=\z@\relax
457
       \bgroup\advance\hsize-\tp@flt@marg@l
458
459
         \tpUseProperty{float-render}%
460
       \egroup
     \else
461
462
       \let\tp@is@subflt\relax
463
       \tp@flt@calc@sameheight
       \ifx\tp@has@subcapt@top\@empty\tp@flt@calc@row@ht{top}\fi%
464
       \ifx\tp@has@subcapt@bottom\@empty\tp@flt@calc@row@ht{bottom}\fi%
465
       \def\tp@prefix{sub}%
466
467
       \tpUseProperty{subfloat-render}%
       \let\tp@prefix\@empty
468
469
       \let\tp@is@subflt\@undefined
470
     \tp@make@outer@caption{bottom}%
471
472 }
```

```
\def\tp@flt@compose{%
473
     \bgroup
474
475
       \hsize\tp@total@flt@width
       \tp@flt@process
476
477
       \tp@make@anchors%
478
       \csname tp@make@listof@\tp@captype\endcsname{\tp@captype}% single float
479
       \par
480
     \egroup}
```

Caption mechanism

\tp@test@caption tests if the current sub-float has any top or bottom caption that needs to be printed.

- #1 is the value of the sub-float counter
- indicates if the caption belongs to the whole float (capt) or a sub-float (subcapt) #1
- top or bottom #1

We compare the caption of the current \SubFloatCnt level with a caption of a non-existing Float level in case there is non-expandable material hard-coded into the caption-#3 Property. If we were to compare the width of the \hbox with \z@, this scenario would give us false positives.

Warning: Long captions can cause the hbox's width to exceed \maxdimen. To avoid LATEX errors in this case, we compare sp instead of pt. This, however, means that if the difference is less than 1pt, the test fails and no caption is printed!

```
\def\tp@test@caption#1#2#3{%
481
     \setbox\tp@tempboxa\hbox{\tpGobble\tpSubFloatCnt0#1\relax\tpUseProperty{caption-#3}\relax}%
482
     \setbox\tp@tempboxb\hbox{\tpGobble\tpSubFloatCnt\m@ne\relax\tpUseProperty{caption-#3}\relax}%
483
     \edef\my@wda{\expandafter\strip@pt\wd\tp@tempboxa sp}%
484
     \edef\my@wdb{\expandafter\strip@pt\wd\tp@tempboxb sp}%
485
     \ifdim\my@wda>\my@wdb\relax
486
      \expandafter\global\expandafter\let\csname tp@has@#2@#3\endcsname\@empty
487
     \fi
488
489 }
```

\tp@test@subcapt tests if the current float has any top or bottom captions that need to be printed

```
490 \def\tp@test@subcapt{%
     \tp@iterate{\@tempcnta}{\@ne}{\tpSubFloatCnt}{%
491
       \tp@test@caption{\the\@tempcnta}{subcapt}{top}%
492
493
       \tp@test@caption{\the\@tempcnta}{subcapt}{bottom}%
    }%
494
495 }
```

\tp@capt@top@offset determines the spacing inserted above both captions.

```
496
   \def\tp@capt@top@offset{%
497
     \ifx\@argi\tp@str@top
498
       \par\if@tp@flt@break@capt\else\nopagebreak\fi%
499
       \expandafter\@tempskipa\tpUseProperty{\tp@prefix caption-sep-bottom}\relax%
500
501
       \advance\@tempskipa\dimexpr-\topskip+\dp\strutbox\relax
       \if@tp@flt@break@capt\advance\@tempskipa\dimexpr-\baselineskip-\ht\strutbox+\topskip\relax\
502
           fi
503
       \ifx\tp@has@subcapt@bottom\@empty
504
        \ifnum\tpSubFloatCnt=\z@
          %% subcapt-bot exists and capt-bot is rendered
505
```

```
\advance\@tempskipa\dimexpr\dp\strutbox\relax
506
507
           \expandafter\advance\expandafter\@tempskipa\tpUseProperty{subcaption-add-sep-bottom}\
               relax%
508
        \fi
509
       \fi
       \vskip\@tempskipa
510
       \leavevmode
511
512
     \{fi\}
```

d etermines the spacing inserted below the captions.

```
513 \def\tp@capt@bottom@offset{%
514
     \ifx\@argi\tp@str@top
       \@tempskipa\z@
515
       \expandafter\advance\expandafter\@tempskipa\tpUseProperty{\tp@prefix caption-sep-top}%
516
517
       \ifnum\tpSubFloatCnt=\z@
518
         \ifx\tp@has@subcapt@top\@empty
519
520
           %% subcapt-top exists and capt-top is rendered
           \advance\@tempskipa\dimexpr\ht\strutbox-\topskip-\p@\relax
521
           \expandafter\advance\expandafter\@tempskipa\tpUseProperty{subcaption-add-sep-top}\relax%
522
         \else
523
           \advance\@tempskipa\dimexpr-\dp\strutbox\relax
524
525
         \fi
       \fi
526
527
       \vskip\@tempskipa
528
       \par\if@tp@flt@break@capt\else\nopagebreak\fi
529
       \ifnum\tpSubFloatCnt>\z@
530
         \vskip\dp\strutbox
531
532
       \fi
     \mathbf{fi}
533
```

\tp@make@caption prints the caption.

```
#1
      is the placement (top, bottom)
#2
      is the vertical alignment (top, middle, bottom)
#3
      is the left margin.
```

```
534 \long\def\tp@make@caption#1#2{%
     \edef\@argi{#1}\edef\@argii{#2}%
535
     \tp@capt@top@offset
536
     \ifnum\tpSubFloatCnt=\z@
537
538
       \def\next{%
        \tpIfAttrStr{\tp@captype}{orientation}{landscape}
539
          {\setbox\@tempboxa\vbox\bgroup\hsize\textheight}
540
          {\hskip\tp@flt@marg@l%
541
542
           \setbox\@tempboxa\vbox\bgroup\advance\hsize-\tp@flt@marg@1}%
543
        }%
544
     \else
       \expandafter\tp@tempskipa\csname tp@flt@capt@row@height@#1\endcsname\relax
545
       \expandafter\advance\expandafter\tp@tempskipa\dimexpr-\baselineskip+\topskip\relax
546
547
       \def\next{\setbox\@tempboxa\vbox to \tp@tempskipa\bgroup}%
548
     \fi
549
     \next%
550
       \ifx\@argii\tp@str@top\else\if@tp@flt@break@capt\else\vss\fi\fi
551
       \tpUseProperty{\tp@prefix caption-face}%
552
       \tpUseProperty{\tp@prefix caption-face-#1}%
553
       \tp@topstrut\tpUseProperty{caption-#1}\strut%
```

```
\ifx\@argii\tp@str@bottom\else\if@tp@flt@break@capt\else\vss\fi\fi%
554
555
     \if@tp@flt@break@capt\unvbox\@tempboxa\else\box\@tempboxa\fi%
556
557
     \tp@capt@bottom@offset
558 }
```

\tp@make@outer@caption is a shell for the outer captions. #1 is the placement (top, bottom)

```
559
   \def\tp@make@outer@caption#1{%
     \def\@argi{#1}%
560
     \expandafter\ifx\csname tp@has@capt@#1\endcsname\@empty
561
       \setbox\z@\vbox{%
562
563
         \tpGobble
564
         \tpSubFloatCnt\z@
565
         \tp@make@caption{#1}{top}%
566
       \immediate\write\@auxout{\string\expandafter\string\gdef\string\csname\space tpFloat\the\
567
           tp@int@flt@cnt Cap#1\string\endcsname{\the\dimexpr \ht\z@+\dp\z@\relax}}%
       \bgroup
568
569
         \savenotes
         \if@tp@flt@break@capt\else\nopagebreak\fi
570
571
         \tpSubFloatCnt\z@
         \tp@make@caption{#1}{top}%
572
         \spewnotes
573
574
       \egroup
       \ifx\@argi\tp@str@top\if@tp@flt@break@capt\else\nopagebreak\fi\fi
575
576
577 }
```

\tpRenderSubFloats iterates through the single sub-floats and renders them in a nice row.

- #1 is the subfloat counter,
- Component name that contains the actual contents of the sub-float, for tpFigure it is Fig, for tpTable it is #2

```
\long\def\tpRenderSubFloats#1#2{%
578
     \leavevmode
579
     \savenotes
580
     \ifnum#1>\@ne\hfill\fi
581
     \vtop\bgroup
582
       \expandafter\hsize\csname tp@\tp@cur@cont @res@width-#1\endcsname\relax
583
       \let\includegraphics\tp@includesubgraphics
584
       \tp@render@sub@float{#1}{#2}%
585
     \egroup
586
587
     \spewnotes
588 }
```

\tp@render@sub@float renders a single sub-float. For the arguments, see \tpRenderSubFloats, above.

```
\long\def\tp@render@sub@float#1#2{%
590
     \tpSubFloatCnt=#1\relax
     \expandafter\ifx\csname tp@has@\tp@prefix capt@top\endcsname\@empty
591
      \tp@make@caption{top}{\tpUseProperty{\tp@prefix caption-valign-top}}%
592
     \fi
593
     \bgroup\strut\tpUseComp{#2}\strut\par\egroup%
594
     \expandafter\ifx\csname tp@has@\tp@prefix capt@bottom\endcsname\@empty
595
      \tp@make@caption{bottom}{\tpUseProperty{\tp@prefix caption-valign-bottom}}%
596
     \fi
597
598 }
```

\tp@flt@calc@row@ht calculates the heights of all captions in the same row.

#1 determins if the top or bottom row is calculated.

```
599 \def\tp@flt@calc@row@ht#1{%
     \@tempcnta\z@
600
     \@tempdima\z@
601
     \tp@iterate{\@tempcnta}{\@ne}{\tpSubFloatCnt}{%
602
603
       \setbox\z@\vbox{%
604
        \tpSubFloatCnt\@tempcnta\relax
        \expandafter\hsize\expandafter\dimexpr\csname tp@\tp@cur@cont @res@width-\the\@tempcnta\
605
             endcsname\relax
        \tpGobble
606
        \tpUseProperty{\tp@prefix caption-face}%
607
        \tpUseProperty{\tp@prefix caption-face-#1}%
608
        \leavevmode
609
         \strut\tpUseProperty{caption-#1}\strut%
610
611
        }%
       \expandafter\ifdim\dimexpr\ht\z@+\dp\z@\relax>\@tempdima \@tempdima\dimexpr\ht\z@+\dp\z@\
612
           relax\fi
613
     \expandafter\edef\csname tp@flt@capt@row@height@#1\endcsname{\the\@tempdima}%
614
615 }
```

\tp@flt@calc@sameheight calculates the ratio between each sub-float's height and the height of the largest sub-float

```
616 \def\tp@flt@calc@sameheight{%
     \ensuremath{\mbox{\tt @tempdima=\z@\relax}}
617
     \ensuremath{\texttt{Qtempcnta}=\z@\mathbf{relax}}
618
     \tp@calc@flt@width=\tp@total@flt@width\relax
619
     \advance\tp@calc@flt@width-\tp@flt@marg@l\relax
620
621
     \tp@iterate{\@tempcnta}{\@ne}{\tpSubFloatCnt}{%
       \edef\@tempa{\CalcRatio{\tp@subflt@maxheight}{\csname tp@\tp@cur@cont @height-\the\@tempcnta
622
            \endcsname}}%
       \ifnum\@tempcnta>\@ne
623
         \advance\tp@calc@flt@width-\tp@subflt@sep\relax%
624
625
       \fi
       \expandafter\@tempdimc\csname tp@\tp@cur@cont @width-\the\@tempcnta\endcsname\relax
626
       \@tempdimb=\@tempa\@tempdimc\relax
627
       \expandafter\edef\csname tp@\tp@cur@cont @adj@width-\the\@tempcnta\endcsname{\the\@tempdimb}%
628
       \advance\@tempdima\@tempdimb
629
     }%
630
     \ensuremath{\tt @tempcnta=\z@\relax}
631
     \@tempdimb=\z@\relax
632
633
     \ensuremath{\texttt{Qtempdimc}=\z@\mathbf{relax}}
634
     \tp@iterate{\@tempcnta}{\@ne}{\tpSubFloatCnt}{%
       \edef\@tempa{\CalcRatio{\csname tp@\tp@cur@cont @adj@width-\the\@tempcnta\endcsname}{\
635
            @tempdima}}%
       \expandafter\edef\csname tp@\tp@cur@cont @res@width-\the\@tempcnta\endcsname{\dimexpr\@tempa
636
            \tp@calc@flt@width\relax}%
       \@tempdimc\dimexpr\csname tp@\tp@cur@cont @height-\the\@tempcnta\endcsname\relax
637
       \@tempdimc\dimexpr\@tempa\@tempdimc\relax
638
639
       \ifdim\@tempa\@tempdimb<\@tempdimc\@tempdimb\@tempdimc\relax\fi
640
     \expandafter\edef\csname tp@\tp@cur@cont @res@height\endcsname{\the\@tempdimb}%
641
642 }
```

Handlers for different float types

Handlers for generic floats

\tpGenericRender is the Component that contains the contents of a generic float.

```
\def\tpGenericRender{\tpUseComp{Content}}
```

\tpGenericHandler is the generic content handler of a float

```
644 \def\tpGenericHandler{\tpMakeFltComp{Content}}
```

\tpSubGenericHandler is the generic handler of a sub-float.

```
\def\tpSubGenericHandler{}
```

7.2 Handlers for figures

\tpFigureHandler tells the float module the name, main namespace, and main content Container of tpFigure type floats.

```
646 \def\tpFigureHandler{\tpMakeFltComp{Fig}}
```

\tp@flt@create@natural is the actual handler for sub-figures.

```
\def\tp@flt@create@natural{\tpUseComp{Fig}}
```

\tpSubFigureHandler is the User-level macro that defines the handler for sub-figures. It also contains code for the nofigs package option.

```
648
  \def\tpSubFigureHandler{%
   \ifx\tp@nofigs\relax
649
650
     651
     \setbox\tp@subfltbox\hbox{\tpGobble\tp@flt@create@natural}%
652
653
   \{fi\}
```

\tpFigureRender tells the module how tpFigures are to be rendered.

```
\def\tpFigureRender{%
654
655
     \bgroup
       \tpIfAttrStr{\tp@captype}{orientation}{landscape}
656
         {\hsize\dimexpr\textwidth-\tp@flt@marg@r-\tp@flt@marg@l\relax}%
657
         {}%
658
       \let\includegraphics\tp@includesubgraphics
659
       \hskip\tp@flt@marg@l
660
661
       \strut\tpUseComp{Fig}\strut
662
     \egroup}
```

\tpSubFigureRender tells the module how sub-floats of tpFigure type floats are to be rendered.

```
663 \def\tpSubFigureRender{%
664
     \hskip\tp@flt@marg@l
    \tp@iterate{\@tempcnta}{\@ne}{\tpSubFloatCnt}{%
```

```
\tpRenderSubFloats{\the\@tempcnta}{Fig}%
666
667
     }}
```

\tp@includesubgraphics is an override of LATEX's \includegraphics patched to adjust for maximum width and height.

```
668 | def | 
669
                   \def\@tp@includesubgraphics[#1]#2{%
                             \ifx\tp@current@class\relax
670
                                        \def\@igopts{max width=\hsize,max height=\vsize}%
671
672
                                        \def\@igopts{width=\hsize}%
673
                              \fi
674
                              \mathbf{if}!#1!\else
675
                                       \def\@igopts{width=\hsize,#1}\%
676
677
                               \gdef\@tp@fig@path{#2}%
678
679
                               \expandafter\tpltx@includegraphics\expandafter[\@igopts]{#2}%
680 }
```

7.3 Handlers for tables

\tp@reserve@tabular is a shell macro that stores the default macro definitions for various tabular mechanisms (currently, only plain tabular, tabulary, tabularx, and htmltabs are supported as content Component of tpTable)

```
\def\tp@reserve@tabular{%
681
     \@tp@reserve@tab{}%
682
     \@tp@reserve@tab{x}%
683
684
     \@tp@reserve@tab{y}%
     \@tp@reserve@htmltab%
685
686 }
```

\@tp@reserve@tab stores the default definitions for a specific vanilla-LATEX tabular environment and re-defines the macros in a way that the tabulars are stored in the \tp@floatbox instead of printed onto the page.

```
\def\@tp@reserve@tab#1{%
687
688
     \expandafter\expandafter\expandafter\let\expandafter\csname orig@tabular#1\expandafter\
         endcsname\csname tabular#1\endcsname
     \expandafter\expandafter\let\expandafter\csname orig@endtabular#1\expandafter\
689
         endcsname\csname endtabular#1\endcsname
     \expandafter\def\csname tabular#1\endcsname{%
690
       \global\setbox\tp@floatbox
691
692
      \vbox\bgroup
        if!#1!else
693
          \let\tabular\orig@tabular
694
          \let\endtabular\orig@endtabular
695
        \fi
696
        \csname orig@tabular#1\endcsname}%
697
     \expandafter\def\csname endtabular#1\endcsname{\csname orig@endtabular#1\endcsname\egroup}%
698
699 }
```

\@tp@reserve@htmltab special handler for tables using the htmltabs package:

```
700 \AtBeginDocument {%
     \@ifpackageloaded{htmltabs}{%
701
702
       \def\@tp@reserve@htmltab{%
703
        \let\tp@addstyle\@empty
```

```
\ifx\tp@fps\@empty
704
705
          \expandafter\ifx\csname tpFloat\the\tp@int@flt@cnt Captop\endcsname\relax\else
            \htInitSkip\csname tpFloat\the\tp@int@flt@cnt Captop\endcsname
706
707
            \advance\htInitSkip\tp@flt@sep@top%
708
709
          \expandafter\ifx\csname tpFloat\the\tp@int@flt@cnt Capbottom\endcsname\relax\else
710
            \htAddToBottom\csname tpFloat\the\tp@int@flt@cnt Capbottom\endcsname
            \advance\htAddToBottom\tp@flt@sep@bottom%
711
712
          \fi
713
         \else
          \def\tp@addstyle{;break-table:false;}%
714
715
         \fi
        \edef\tp@tempa{margin-left:\tp@flt@marg@l\tp@addstyle}%
716
717
        \expandafter\htAddStyle\expandafter{\tp@tempa}%
718
        \global\setbox\htTableBox\box\voidb@x
719
        \let\htOutputTable\relax
       }}{\let\@tp@reserve@htmltab\relax}%
720
721 }
```

\tpTableHandler defines the content handler for tpTable.

```
722 \def\tpTableHandler{%
723 \tpMakeFltComp{Content}%
724 \tp@reserve@tabular
725 }
```

\tpGetTableContent returns the tp@floatbox if it is not un-itialized or void.

```
726 \def\tpGetTableContent{%
727 \ifx\htTableBox\@undefined\else
728 \ifvoid\htTableBox\else
729 \let\tp@floatbox\htTableBox%
730 \fi\fi}
```

\tpSubTableHandler is the handler for sub-tables. So far, **coco-floats.sty** does not support tables to be sub-floats, so we just generate an Error message.

\tpTableRender defines the Renderer for tpTable content Components

```
734 \def\tpTableRender{%
735 \tpGetTableContent
736 \tpContent{\unvbox\tp@floatbox}%
737 \tpUseComp{Content}%
738 \par\if@tp@flt@break@capt\else\nopagebreak\fi
739 \vskip\dp\strutbox
740 }
```

\tpSubTableRender Is the Renderer for table sub-floats (which we don't allow yet, so this definition is un-used at the moment)

```
741 \def\tpSubTableRender{%
742 \tp@iterate{\@tempcnta}{\@ne}{\tpSubFloatCnt}{%
743 \tpGetTableContent
```

```
\tpContent{\unvbox\tp@floatbox}%
744
745
       \tpRenderSubFloats{\the\@tempcnta}{Content}%
746
     }}
```

7.4 Helpers

\tpFloatBarrier can be used to force all pending floats to be printed at the next shipout.

```
\def\tpFloatBarrier{\AtBeginShipoutNext{\clearpage}}
```

Default Settings 8

```
\tpAddToDefault{float}{%
748
     \tpSetProperty{intext-skip-top}{\intextsep}%% non-float sep top
749
     \tpSetProperty{intext-skip-bottom}{\intextsep}%% non-float sep bottom
750
     \tpSetProperty{float-skip-top}{\z@}\% float sep top
751
752
     \tpSetProperty{float-skip-bottom}{\z@}\% float sep bottom
753
     \tpSetProperty{sub-float-sep}{\tp@subflt@sep}\% space between sub-floats
754
     \tpSetProperty{margin-inner}{\z@}%% left margin on odd pages/right margin on even pages
     \tpSetProperty{margin-outer}{\z@}%% right margin on odd pages/left margin on even pages
755
     \tpSetProperty{margin-left}{\z@}%% left margin
756
     \tpSetProperty{margin-right}{\z@}\ right margin
757
758
     \tpSetProperty{before-float}{\parindent\z@}%% executed before content is evaluated
     \tpSetProperty{float-handler}{\tpGenericHandler}% Alias for the caption type specific content
759
     \tpSetProperty{subfloat-handler}{\tpSubGenericHandler}% Alias for the caption type specific content
760
     \tpSetProperty{float-render}{\tpGenericRender}% Alias for the caption type specific content printer
761
     \tpSetProperty{subfloat-render}{\tpGenericRender}% Alias for the caption type specific content
762
         printer for sub-floats
763
     \tpSetProperty{subfloat-same-height}{}% if true, the subfloat must/can be adjusted to the same
         heights
764
     %% captions
     \tpSetProperty{caption-face}{}% style applied to top and bottom captions
765
     \tpSetProperty{caption-face-top}{}% style applied to top captions
766
767
     \tpSetProperty{caption-face-bottom}{}% style applied to bottom captions
     \tpSetProperty{source-face}{}% Format of source, additional to caption-format
768
     \tpSetProperty{legend-face}{}% Format of legend, additional to caption-format
769
770
     \tpSetProperty{caption-sep-top}{\z@}%% vertical space between top caption and content
     \tpSetProperty{caption-sep-bottom}{\z@}%% vertical space between content and bottom caption
771
     \tpSetProperty{caption-top}{%
772
       \tpIfComp{Number}{{\tpUseProperty{number-face}\tpUseComp{Number}\tpUseProperty{number-sep
773
           }}}{}
774
       \tpUseComp{Caption}%
775
     }%
776
     \tpSetProperty{caption-bottom}{%
777
       \tpIfComp{Legend}{{\tpUseProperty{legend-face}\tpUseComp{Legend}}}{}%
778
       \tpIfComp{Source}{%
        779
780
         {\tpUseProperty{source-face}%
781
         \tpUseComp{Source}}}{}}%
782
     \tpPropertyLet{subcaption-face}{caption-face}% style applied to top and bottom captions
783
     \tpSetProperty{subcaption-face-top}{\tpUseProperty{caption-face-top}}\% style applied to top
         captions
```

```
\tpSetProperty{subcaption-face-bottom}{\tpUseProperty{caption-face-bottom}}\squares style applied to
784
         bottom captions
     \tpSetProperty{subcaption-add-sep-top}{\z@}%% additional vertical space between top caption and top
785
         sub-caption
786
     \tpSetProperty{subcaption-add-sep-bottom}{\z@}%% additional vertical space between bottom sub-
         caption and bottom caption
787
     \tpSetProperty{subcaption-sep-top}{\tpUseProperty{caption-sep-top}}\% vertical space between top
         sub-caption and content
     \tpSetProperty{subcaption-sep-bottom}{\tpUseProperty{caption-sep-bottom}} % vertical space
788
         between content and bottom sub-caption
789
     \tpSetProperty{subcaption-top}{\tpUseProperty{caption-top}}% in case, sub-float captions diverge
         from main caption
     \tpSetProperty{subcaption-bottom}{\tpUseProperty{caption-bottom}}% in case, sub-float captions
790
         diverge from main caption
791
     \tpSetProperty{subcaption-valign-top}{top}\% vertical alignment of neighboring top-placed sub-
792
     \tpSetProperty{subcaption-valign-bottom}{top}\% vertical alignment of neighboring bottom-placed sub-
         captions
793
     %% Numbers
     \tpSetProperty{numbering}{auto}\square automatic numbering for missing Number component
794
795
     \tpSetProperty{number-sep}{\enskip}% Separator between label and caption
796
     \tpSetProperty{number-face}{\bfseries}% Format of number, additional to caption-format
     \tpSetProperty{sub-number-sep}{\,}%% when sub-captions, this is placed between the float counter and
797
         the sub-float counter
798
     \tpSetProperty{sub-number-style}{alph}%% counting style of subcaption counters
     \tpSetProperty{sub-number-face}{}%% format of subcaption counters
799
800
     \tpSetProperty{sub-number-before}{()% stuff that is put immediately before the sub counter
     \tpSetProperty{sub-number-after}{)}% stuff that is put immediately after the sub counter
801
802
     \tpSetProperty{sub-number-format}{% Format of the sub number
       \tpUseProperty{float-number}%
803
804
       \tpUseProperty{sub-number-sep}%
805
       \tpUseProperty{sub-number}}%
806
     %% List-of entries
     \tpSetProperty{list-of-page-sep}{\dotfill}%
807
808
     \tpPropertyLet{list-of-number-face}{list-of-caption-face}%
     \tpSetProperty{list-of-number-sep}{\enskip}%
809
     \tpSetProperty{list-of-number-align}{left}%
810
811
     \tpSetProperty{list-of-number-format}{%
       \bgroup
812
        \tpUseProperty{list-of-number-face}%
813
        \tpUseComp{ListofNumber}%
814
815
        \tpUseProperty{list-of-number-sep}%
       \egroup}%
816
817
     \tpSetProperty{list-of-parfillskip}{-\rightskip}%
818
     \tpSetProperty{list-of-margin-right}{\@pnumwidth \@plus 1fil}%
819
     \tpSetProperty{list-of-margin-left}{auto}%
     \tpSetProperty{list-of-indent}{auto}% list-of-float appearance
820
821
     \tpSetProperty{list-of-block}{%
822
       \tpUseProperty{list-of-caption-face}%
       \tpIfComp{ListofNumber}
823
824
         {\tpUseComp{list-of-hang-number}}
825
         {\leftskip0pt}%
       \tpUseComp{ListofCaption}%
826
       \tpUseProperty{list-of-page-sep}\tpUseComp{ListofPage}%
827
828
     }% list-of-float appearance
     \tpSetProperty{list-of-before-entry}{%
829
830
831
       \leftskip\tpUseProperty{list-of-margin-left}\relax%
       \rightskip \tpUseProperty{list-of-margin-right}\relax%
832
       833
834
       \parindent\z@
```

```
835
    \@afterindenttrue
    \interlinepenalty\@M
836
837
    \leavevmode
838
    \null\nobreak
839
   }% list-of-float appearance
840
   841 }
```

Container tpFigure defines the defaults for the **tpFigure** Container.

```
842 \tpDeclareFloat{tpFigure}{figure}{lof}{%
     \tpSetProperty{subfloat-same-height}{true}% if true, the subfloat must/can be adjusted to the same
843
         heights
     \tpSetProperty{float-handler}{\tpFigureHandler}%
844
     \tpSetProperty{subfloat-handler}{\tpSubFigureHandler}%
845
     \tpSetProperty{float-render}{\tpFigureRender}%
846
847
     \tpSetProperty{subfloat-render}{\tpSubFigureRender}%
848 }
```

Container tpTable defines the default Properties of the tpTable Container.

```
\tpDeclareFloat{tpTable}{table}{lot}{%
849
    \tpSetProperty{sub-caption-valign-top}{bottom}%
850
     \tpSetProperty{float-handler}{\tpTableHandler}%
851
852
     \tpSetProperty{subfloat-handler}{\tpSubTableHandler}%
853
     \tpSetProperty{float-render}{\tpTableRender}%
     \tpSetProperty{subfloat-render}{\tpSubTableRender}%
854
855 }
```

```
856 %</floats>
```

Modul 11

coco-frame.dtx

This file provides facilities to visualise crop marks and the print area.

1 Top-Level Interface

```
35 \let\tp@frame n
36 \define@choicekey{coco-frame.sty}{frame}[\tp@frame\nr]{none,crop,frame}{%
    \ifcase\nr\relax% none
37
      \let\tp@frame n
38
    \or% crop
39
40
      \let\tp@frame p
41
    \else% frame
42
      \let\tp@frame w
43
    \fi
44 }%
45 \ProcessOptionsX\relax
```

2 Cropmark printer

```
46 \ifx\tp@frame p\relax
47
    \newdimen\bleed \bleed4mm\relax
    \newdimen\tp@frame@offset \tp@frame@offset4em\relax%
48
    \verb|\voffset| dimexpr| tp@frame@offset-lin| \textbf{relax}|
49
50
    \hoffset\dimexpr\tp@frame@offset-1in\relax
51
    \edef\l@offset{\strip@pt\dimexpr\tp@frame@offset*7200/7227\relax}
52
    \edef\r@offset{\strip@pt\dimexpr(\tp@frame@offset+\paperwidth)*7200/7227\relax}
    \edef\u@offset{\strip@pt\dimexpr(842bp-\tp@frame@offset-\paperheight)*7200/7227\relax}
53
    \edef\o@offset{\strip@pt\dimexpr(842bp-\tp@frame@offset)*7200/7227\relax}
54
    \edef\b@l@offset{\strip@pt\dimexpr(\tp@frame@offset-\bleed)*7200/7227\relax}
```

```
\edef\b@r@offset{\strip@pt\dimexpr(\tp@frame@offset+\paperwidth+\bleed)*7200/7227\relax}
56
    \edef\b@u@offset{\strip@pt\dimexpr(842bp-\tp@frame@offset-\paperheight-\bleed)*7200/7227\relax
57
58
    \edef\b@o@offset{\strip@pt\dimexpr(842bp-\tp@frame@offset+\bleed)*7200/7227\relax}
59
    \edef\@tempa{%
60
     /TrimBox [\l@offset\space\u@offset\space\r@offset\space\o@offset]
61
     /BleedBox[\b@l@offset\space\b@u@offset\space\b@o@offset]
62
     %/CropBox[\b@1@offset\space\b@u@offset\space\b@o@offset]
     %/MediaBox[\b@l@offset\space\b@u@offset\space\b@r@offset\space\b@o@offset]
63
64
65
    \expandafter\pdfpageattr\expandafter{\@tempa}
66 \fi
```

Setting PDF boundaries

```
67 \ifx\tp@frame n\relax
    \RequirePackage{luatex85}
68
    \pdfpagewidth\paperwidth
69
70
    \pdfpageheight\paperheight
71 \else
72
    \ifx\tp@frame p\relax
73
      \edef\stockwidth{\the\dimexpr\paperwidth+\tp@frame@offset+\tp@frame@offset\relax}
74
      \edef\stockheight{\the\dimexpr\paperheight+\tp@frame@offset+\tp@frame@offset\relax}
75
    \fi
```

Cropmarks and page area frames both are painted via the crop package.

```
\RequirePackage{crop}
76
    \renewcommand*\CROP@marks{%
77
78
      \CROP@setmarkcolor
79
      \CROP@user@b
      \vskip1in\hskip1in\relax
80
      \CROP@ulc\null\hfill\CROP@@info\CROP@upedge\hfill\null\CROP@urc\hskip-1in\null
81
      \vfill
82
      \CROP@ledge\hfill\CROP@redge
83
      \vfill
84
85
      \hskip1in\relax
86
      87
      \vskip-1in}%
    \ifx\tp@frame p\relax
88
      \def\camcross{%
89
        \smash{\rlap{%
90
91
           \kern-0.15\p@
           \vrule\@width0.3\p@\@height1.7mm\@depth1.7mm\relax
92
93
           \kern-0.15\p@
94
           \kern-1.7mm\relax
           \vrule\@width0.3\p@\@height1.7mm\@depth1.7mm\relax
95
           \kern-0.3\p@
96
           \raise1.7mm\rlap{\vrule\@width3.4mm\@height\z@\@depth0.3\p@}%
97
98
           \lower1.7mm\rlap{\vrule\@width3.4mm\@height0.3\p@\@depth\z@}%
99
           100
           \kern-0.3\p@
101
           \vrule\@width0.3\p@\@height1.7mm\@depth1.7mm\relax}}}
102
      \def\cammcrossleft{%
        \lap{\camcross\vrule\@width6mm\@height0.15\p@\@depth0.15\p@\kern4mm}}
103
104
      \def\cammcrossright{%
105
        \rlap{\kern4mm\vrule\@width6mm\@height0.15\p@\@depth0.15\p@\camcross}}
106
      \def\cammcrossup{%
        \rlap{\smash{\raise10mm\hbox{\camcross}%
107
108
           \kern-0.15\p@\vrule\@width0.3\p@\@height10mm\@depth-4mm}}}%
      \def\cammcrossdown{%
109
```

```
\rlap{\smash{\lower10mm\hbox{\camcross}%
110
111
             \kern-0.15\p@\vrule\@width0.3\p@\@height-4mm\@depth10mm}}}%
112
       \def\CROP@@ulc{\cammcrossup\cammcrossleft}
113
       \def\CROP@@urc{\cammcrossup\cammcrossright}
114
       \def\CROP@@llc{\cammcrossdown\cammcrossleft}
115
       \def\CROP@@lrc{\cammcrossdown\cammcrossright}
       \renewcommand*\CROP@@info{{%
116
117
           \global\advance\CROP@index\@ne
118
           \def\x{\discretionary{}{}\hbox{\kern.5em---\kern.5em}}}%
119
           \ifx\CROP@pagecolor\@empty
120
           \else
121
             \advance\dimen@\CROP@overlap
           \fi
122
           \hb@xt@\z@{\%}
123
124
            \hss
            \label{lower1emvbox} $$ \o\z@{\vss} $
125
126
              \centering
127
              \hsize\dimexpr\paperwidth-20\p@\relax
128
              \normalfont
129
              \large
130
              \vskip5mm\relax
131
              \addvspace{\bleed}}%
            \hss}}%
132
133
       }%
       \crop[cam]
134
```

the code for the page area frame

```
\else% w
135
       \@tempdima\dimexpr\textheight\relax
136
137
       \divide\@tempdima by\baselineskip
       \multiply\@tempdima by65536\relax
138
139
       \edef\cnt@baselines{\strip@pt\@tempdima}%
       \def\tp@frame@lines{%
140
        \@tempcnta\z@
141
        \loop\advance\@tempcnta\@ne
142
143
          \hsize1em\relax
144
          \ifodd\count\z@
            \vrule\@width1em\@height0.2\p@\@depth0.02\p@
145
            \label{lap{smash{the}@tempenta},}}%
146
          \fi%
147
          \rlap{%
148
149
            \ifodd\count\z@\else\fi
            \vrule\@width\columnwidth\@height0.00005\p@\@depth0\p@
150
151
             \kern\columnsep\vrule\@width\columnwidth\@height0.00005\p@\@depth0\p@
152
            \fi
153
            \ifodd\count\z@\else
154
             155
156
              \lap{\smash{\the\@tempcnta\,}}%
157
            \fi
158
          }%
159
          \break
        \ifnum\@tempcnta<\cnt@baselines
160
        \repeat}
161
162
       \def\tp@margin@frame{%
163
        \vrule height\textheight%
164
        \hskip-\marginparwidth\relax
        \vbox to\textheight{\hsize\marginparwidth\relax
165
166
          \rlap{\vbox to\z@{\hrule width\marginparwidth}}%
167
          \null\vss
```

```
\rlap{\vbox to\z@{\hrule width\marginparwidth}}%
168
169
170
        \vrule height\textheight%
171
       \renewcommand*\CROP@@frame{%
172
173
        \vskip0in%
174
        \color[cmyk]{0.4,0,0,0}%
175
        \ifodd\count\z@\let\@themargin\oddsidemargin\else\let\@themargin\evensidemargin\fi
176
        \advance\@themargin1in
177
         \moveright\@themargin
         \vbox to\z@{\baselineskip\z@skip\lineskip\z@skip\lineskiplimit\z@
178
179
          \vskip\topmargin\vbox to\z@{\vss\hrule width\textwidth}%
          \vskip\headheight\vbox to\z@{\vss\hrule width\textwidth}%
180
          \vskip\headsep\vbox to\z@{\vss\hrule width\textwidth}%
181
182
          \hbox to\textwidth{%
183
            \ifodd\count\z@
              \rlap{\hskip\dimexpr\textwidth+\marginparsep+\marginparwidth\relax\tp@margin@frame}%
184
185
            \else
186
              \rlap{\hskip-\marginparsep\relax\tp@margin@frame}%
            \fi
187
            \llap{\vbox to\textheight{\tiny\let\@tempa\f@size\normalsize\let\f@size\@tempa\
188
                 selectfont
                \vskip\topskip\tp@frame@lines\null\vss}}%
189
            \llap{\vrule height\textheight}%
190
            \if@twocolumn
191
              \hskip\columnwidth\rlap{\vrule height\textheight}%
192
              \hskip\columnsep\rlap{\vrule height\textheight}%
193
194
195
            \hfil\vrule height\textheight
          }%
196
197
          \vbox to\z@{\vss\hrule width\textwidth}%
          \vskip\footskip\vbox to\z@{\vss\hrule width\textwidth}%
198
199
          \vss}%
        \vbox to\z@{\baselineskip\z@skip\lineskip\z@skip\lineskiplimit\z@%
200
201
          \vskip-0in\rlap{\hskip1in%
            \vbox to\z@{\vbox to\z@{\vss\hrule width\paperwidth}%
202
              \hbox to \paperwidth{\llap{\vrule height\paperheight}\hfil%
203
                \vrule height\paperheight}%
204
              \vbox to\z@{\vss\hrule width\paperwidth}%
205
              \vss}}\vss}}
206
       \crop[frame,noinfo]%
207
208
     \fi
   \fi
209
```

210 %</frame>

Modul 12

coco-lists.dtx

This module provides handlers for lists like glossaries and descriptions.

```
24 %<*lists>
25 %%
26 %% module for CoCoTeX that handles lists.
27 %%
28 %% Maintainer: marcus.hottenroth@le-tex.de
29 %%
30 | %% lualatex -texlive ≥2019
31 %%
32 \NeedsTeXFormat{LaTeX2e}[2018/12/01]
33 \ProvidesPackage{coco-lists}
34
                [2024/01/29 0.4.0 CoCoTeX lists module]
35 \RequirePackage{coco-common}
36 \usepackage{enumerate}
37 \ifx\labelitemfont\@undefined\let\labelitemfont\relax\fi
38 \renewcommand\labelitemi {\labelitemfont \textendash}
39 \setlength\leftmargini{\parindent}%
40 \def\@listi{%
         \leftmargin\leftmargini
41
          \parsep \z@
42
          \listparindent\parindent
43
          \topsep .5\baselineskip % Hier Properties nutzen!
44
         \forall z@
45
46 \let\@listI\@listi
      \def\@listii {\leftmargin\leftmarginii
                                     \labelwidth\leftmarginii
48
49
                                     \advance\labelwidth-\labelsep
                                     \topsep \z@
50
                                      \parsep \z@
51
                                     \itemsep \parsep}
52
53
       \def\@listiii{\leftmargin\leftmarginiii
54
55
                                     \labelwidth\leftmarginiii
                                     \verb|\advance| labelwidth-| labelsep|
56
                                     \topsep \z@
57
                                      \parsep \z@
58
59
                                      \partopsep \z@
60
                                     \itemsep \topsep}
61
62 \def\@@enum@[#1]{%
          \ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ensuremath{\ens
63
          \@enloop#1\@enum@
64
65
           \ifx\@enThe\@enQmark\@warning{The counter will not be printed.%
66
              ^^J\space\@spaces\@spaces\@spaces The label is: \the\@enLab}\fi
67
           \expandafter\edef\csname label\@enumctr\endcsname{\the\@enLab}%
           \expandafter\let\csname the\@enumctr\endcsname\@enThe
68
           \csname c@\@enumctr\endcsname7
69
       \@enum@}
```

```
71
72
   \def\@enum@{%
73
     \\\lambda ist{\csname label\@enumctr\endcsname}\%
74
     {%
75
       \usecounter{\@enumctr}%
76
       \labelsep\z@
77
       \labelwidth\leftmargin
78
       \def\makelabel##1{\hb@xt@\leftmargin{##1\hss}}}}
79
   \def\itemize{%
80
     \ifnum \@itemdepth >\thr@@\@toodeep\else
       \advance\@itemdepth\@ne
81
       \edef\@itemitem{labelitem\romannumeral\the\@itemdepth}%
82
83
       \expandafter
84
       \list
85
         \csname\@itemitem\endcsname
86
         {\labelsep\z@
          \itemindent\z@
87
88
          \labelwidth\leftmargin
89
          \def\makelabel##1{\hb@xt@\leftmargin{##1\hss}}}%
     \fi}
90
91
   \let\orig@doendpe\@doendpe
92
   \def\endenumerate{\endlist
     \gdef\@doendpe{%
93
       \@endpetrue
94
       \everypar{{\setbox\z@\lastbox}\everypar{}\@endpefalse}%
95
       \global\let\@doendpe\orig@doendpe}}
96
   \def\enditemize{\endlist
97
     \gdef\@doendpe{%
98
99
       \@endpetrue
100
       \everypar{{\setbox\z@\lastbox}\everypar{}\@endpefalse}%
       \global\let\@doendpe\orig@doendpe}}
101
102 % Counter for the description lists.
103 \newcount\tp@descriptionlist
104 % Macro for saving the maximum label widths associated with the respective list;
105 % Opt as fallback value, if there is no *.aux file yet.
106 \global\newdimen\tp@maxLabelWidth%
   \def\tp@getMaxLabelWidth{%
107
     \global\tp@maxLabelWidth=0pt%
108
109 }
| \renewenvironment{description}[1][]{%
     \small
111
112
     % Read maximum label width for this list from the *.aux file and save as \tp@maxLabelWidth.
     \tp@getMaxLabelWidth
113
     \left\{ 1ist{}\right\} \%
114
      {\labelwidth\tp@maxLabelWidth
115
       \verb|\labelsep| tp@maxLabelWidth+ \verb|\labelsep| relax| \\
116
       \topsep .5\baselineskip
117
118
       \itemsep\z@
       \partopsep\z@
119
       \parsep\z@
120
121
       \itemindent\z@
       \def\makelabel##1{%
122
         \sbox\z@{\##1}%
123
         \ifdim\tp@maxLabelWidth<\wd\z@\relax
124
125
           \global\tp@maxLabelWidth=\wd\z@\relax
         \fi
126
127
         \hb@xt@\labelwidth{\unhbox\z@\hss}\%
128
       }%
      }%
129
130 }{\endlist
```

```
131 \immediate\write\@auxout{\string\g@addto@macro\string\tp@getMaxLabelWidth{\string\ifnum\string\
        the\tp@descriptionlist\relax\string\global\string\tp@maxLabelWidth=\
        the\tp@maxLabelWidth\string\fi}}%
132 \global\advance\tp@descriptionlist by \@ne
133
   \qdef\@doendpe{%
134
       \@endnetrue
135
       \everypar{{\setbox\z@\lastbox}\everypar{}\@endpefalse}%
136
       \global\let\@doendpe\orig@doendpe}}
137
139 % Environment declarations, CoCoTeX style.
140 % Supposed to eventually replace all the definitions above.
141 % Inheritance mechanism known from headings also applies here.
142 \def\tp@ifstring#1#2{%
143
    \ensuremath{\mbox{\sf def}}\ensuremath{\mbox{\it @tempa}{\#1}}\%
144
     \ensuremath{\mbox{edef}\ensuremath{\mbox{@tempb}{\#2}}\%}
    \ifx\@tempa\@tempb\relax%
145
146 }
147 % Convert a number to a lowercase letter.
148 \def\tp@numToLCLetter#1{%
149
     \count255=\the\lccode'a%
150
     \advance\count255 by -\@ne%
     \advance\count255 by #1%
151
     \char\count255%
152
153 }
154 % Convert a number to an uppercase letter.
155 \def\tp@numToUCLetter#1{%
156
     \count255=\uccode A%
     \advance\count255 by -\@ne%
157
     \advance\count255 by #1%
158
159
     \char\count255%
160 }
161
   \tpAddToDefault{list}{%
162
     \tpSetProperty{after-skip}{\z@}% Vertical space after the list.
163
     \tpSetProperty{before-skip}{\z@}% Vertical space before the list.
     \tpSetProperty{item-indent}{0\p@}% Vertical difference from property left-margin.
164
     \tpSetProperty{label-char}{} % Only applies with label-type «char» (or empty).
165
     \tpSetProperty{label-prefix-delimiter}{} % The character/string between the prefix (inherited from
166
         list one level above) and the actual item's label. Used for numbered lists.
     \tpSetProperty{label-sep}{5mm}
167
168
     \tpSetProperty{label-suffix}{}
169
     \tpSetProperty{label-type}{char} % Label types: char (use label-char; default), number, Alpha, alpha,
170
     \tpSetProperty{label-width}{0\p@} % Label width is internally increased to width of label character.
     \tpSetProperty{left-margin}{0\p@}
171
172 }
   \long\def\tpDeclareList{\@ifnextchar[{\@tpDeclareList}{\@tpDeclareList[]}}%]
173
174
   \long\def\@tpDeclareList[#1]#2#3{%
     \tpNamespace{list}%
175
     \expandafter\def\csname tp@list@name\endcsname{#2}%
176
177
     \if!#1!\else\expandafter\protect\expandafter\def\csname tp@list@#3@parent\endcsname{#1}\fi%
178
     \expandafter\protect\expandafter\def\csname tp@list@#2@properties\endcsname{#3}%
179
180
181
     % Define the macro for list with name/class #2.
     \expandafter\def\csname tpUseList#2\endcsname{%
182
183
       \if!#1!\else\edef\tp@list@parent{#1}\fi%
184
       \tpNamespace{list}%
185
       \tpCascadeProps{#2}{list} % Load the namespace defaults defined in \tpAddToDefault, the parent
           properties (if any), and the specific list properties.
186
```

237

238

\vskip\tpUseProperty{before-skip}

```
239
240
     \tpIfPropVal{label-type}{char}{%
       \tpSetProperty{label-prefix-delimiter}{}%
241
       \tpSetProperty{label-suffix}{}%
242
243
     }{%
244
       \tpSetProperty{label-char}{}%
245
     3%
246
     \tpIfPropVal{label-type}{number}{\edef\tp@convertNumber##1{##1}}{}%
     \tpIfPropVal{label-type}{Alpha}{\edef\tp@convertNumber##1{\tp@numToUCLetter{##1}}}{}%
247
248
     \tpIfPropVal{label-type}{alpha}{\edef\tp@convertNumber##1{\tp@numToLCLetter{##1}}}{}%
     \tpIfPropVal{label-type}{Roman}{\def\tp@convertNumber##1{\uppercase\expandafter{\romannumeral}
249
         ##1}}{{}}
     \label-type $$ \left( \mathbf{f} \right) = \mathbf{1} \
250
251
252
     % Use the label prefix delimiter only if there actually is a label prefix.
253
     \ifx\empty\tp@inheritedPrefixAbove\empty
254
       \tpSetProperty{label-prefix-delimiter}{}%
255
     \fi
256
     % Set the label width based on the potentially longest label string.
257
     \setbox\tp@labelbox = \hbox{\tp@inheritedPrefixAbove\tpUseProperty{label-prefix-delimiter}\
         tpUseProperty{label-char}\tpUseProperty{label-suffix}}%
258
     \ifdim\wd\tp@labelbox > \tpUseProperty{label-width}\relax%
       \tpSetProperty{label-width}{\the\wd\tp@labelbox}%
259
260
261
262
     % If the macro already exists (loaded from the aux file), ...
     \expandafter\ifx\csname tp@maxLabelWidth@\the\tp@listNumber @\the\tp@currListDepth\endcsname\
263
         relax%
     \else%
264
265
      % ...set the «label-width» property accordingly.
       \tpSetProperty{label-width}{\csname tp@maxLabelWidth@\the\tp@listNumber @\the\
266
           tp@currListDepth\endcsname}%
267
     \fi
268
269
     \list{%
270
       % Label. Uses [] in description items. Empty otherwise.%
271
     }{%
272
       \labelwidth\tpUseProperty{label-width}%
       \labelsep\dimexpr\tpUseProperty{label-sep}+\tpUseProperty{item-indent}\relax%
273
       \leftmargin\dimexpr\tpUseProperty{left-margin}+\tpUseProperty{label-width}+\tpUseProperty{
274
           label-sep}\relax%
       \topsep0mm%
275
276
       \partopsep0mm%
       \itemindent\tpUseProperty{item-indent}%
277
       \def\makelabel##1{%
278
        % If the list is an enumerated one, increment the item counter and set the label accordingly.
279
280
        \tpIfPropVal{label-type}{char}{}{%
281
          \global\expandafter\advance\csname tp@itemNumber\the\tp@currListDepth\endcsname by \@ne%
          \tpSetProperty{label-char}{\tp@convertNumber{\the\csname tp@itemNumber\the\
282
               tp@currListDepth\endcsname}}%
283
        \ifx\empty##1\empty%
284
          % Checking this condition is not necessary by all means, but prevents inheriting and accumulating
285
               characters if «inherit» option is set in the TeX document.
          \tpIfPropVal{label-type}{char}{}{%
286
            \global\expandafter\edef\csname tp@inheritablePrefix\the\tp@currListDepth\endcsname{\
287
                 tp@inheritedPrefixAbove\tpUseProperty{label-prefix-delimiter}\tpUseProperty{label-
                 char}}%
          }
288
          % Measure the actual full label width.
289
```

```
\hbox to \tpUseProperty{label-width}{\tp@inheritedPrefixAbove\tpUseProperty{label-prefix-
290
              delimiter}\tpUseProperty{label-char}\tpUseProperty{label-suffix}\hss}%
291
          \setbox\tp@labelbox = \hbox{\tp@inheritedPrefixAbove\tpUseProperty{label-prefix-delimiter
              }\tpUseProperty{label-char}\tpUseProperty{label-suffix}}%
292
        \else
293
          \hbox to \tpUseProperty{label-width}{##1\hss}%
294
          \setbox\tp@labelbox = \hbox{##1}%
295
        \fi
296
        % If the macro for the list and the according depth is not set yet, ...
297
        \expandafter\ifx\csname tp@maxLabelWidth@\the\tp@listNumber @\the\tp@currListDepth\
            endcsname\relax%
          % ...define it based on the calculated full label width.
298
          % (Needs \xdef! Fully expands the macro definition. Otherwise, the saved macro would change its
299
              value with \tp@labelbox's content.)
300
          \expandafter\xdef\csname tp@maxLabelWidth@\the\tp@listNumber @\the\tp@currListDepth\
              endcsname{\the\wd\tp@labelbox}%
301
        \else%
302
          % If the currently defined macro holds a smaller label width than the actual label box, update the
          303
              endcsname < \the\wd\tp@labelbox\relax%</pre>
           \expandafter\xdef\csname tp@maxLabelWidth@\the\tp@listNumber @\the\tp@currListDepth\
304
                endcsname{\the\wd\tp@labelbox}%
          \fi
305
        \fi
306
      }%
307
308
    }%
309 }
310 \tpDeclareList{default}{}
   \def\tp@list@load@props{\csname tp@list@\tp@list@name @properties\endcsname}
```

%</lists> 312